# MY18 RG Trailblazer Owner's Manual



GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232, Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

#### Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing safety recall or rework on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

GM Holden Ltd (Holden) is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe. Oceania and Asia.

Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.

You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@am.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

© 2018 GM Holden I td © 2018 Holden New Zealand Ltd Printed in Australia Reproduction in whole or part is Part No. 92509412 prohibited without written approval from February 2018 GM Holden Ltd., ABN 84 006 893 232 (Australia) or

(MY18 RG Trailblazer, Print 2) Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

# **Contents**

Introduction
In Brief 5
Keys, Doors, and Windows 17
Seats and Restraints 32
Storage 56
Instruments and Controls 64
Lighting 92
Infotainment System 99
Climate Controls 180
Driving and Operating 188
Vehicle Care 228
Service and Maintenance 273
Technical Data 275
Customer Information 283
Index 286

## Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current Trailblazer vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

## **Using this Manual**

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, special equipment or accessories.
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in bold letters.

# Danger, Warning, and Caution

# **⚠** Danger

Text marked  $\triangle$  **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

# **Marning**

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

#### Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

# **№** NOTES

Introduction

# In Brief

Instrument Panel Instrument Panel Overview 5
Initial Drive Information Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System
Remote Vehicle Start
Head Restraint Adjustment 10 Safety Belts
Mirror Adjustment
Exterior Lighting
Horn
Climate Controls
Parking

## **Instrument Panel**

#### **Instrument Panel Overview**



#### 6 In Brief

- Instrument Panel Overview
   ♦ 65

- 10. Central Air Vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* \$\dip 185
- 11. Radio Controls and Display. See *Overview* ⇒ 100

- 14. *Glove Box ⇒* 57

- 15. Power Outlets ⇒ 70
- 16. Descent Control System (DCS)⇒ 205
- (ESC) ⇒ 204 18. Shift Lever ⇒ 196

- 23. Fuel Tank Flap Release Lever. See *Filling the Tank* \$\div 221
- Instrument Panel Fuse Block
   ⇒ 251

# Initial Drive Information

# Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

**Remote Keyless Entry** 



The key operates all doors and the ignition.

- Unlock all doors and the tailgate by pressing once.
  - The hazard lamps flash twice.
- Press and hold to automatically open all windows.

Press to lock all doors and the tailgate.

The hazard lamps flash once and any open windows automatically close.

These features can be customized through the Infotainment System.

#### Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped with this feature, the engine can be started from outside the vehicle.

#### Starting the Vehicle



- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
- 2. Press and release **1**.
- Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash.

When the engine starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

#### 8 In Brief

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once.

#### **Canceling a Remote Start**

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold Q until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

## **Seat Adjustment**

#### **Seat Positioning**



- Move the seat forwards or backwards by lifting the handle at the front and sliding the seat.
- 2. Release the handle to engage the latch.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

#### **Seat Backrests**



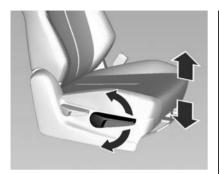
- 1. Recline the seatback by pulling the lever.
- 2. Adjust the angle and release the lever.
- 3. Allow the seat to engage.

#### Note

Do not lean on the seat when adjusting.

#### **Seat Height**

The vehicle may have seat height adjustment.



- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

# Power Seat Adjustment Seat Positioning

The vehicle may have power seat adjustment.

#### Caution

Avoid spilling any liquid near the front seat power switch.



 Move the seat forwards or backwards by sliding the switch.

#### **Seat Backrests**



 Recline the seatback by sliding the switch forwards or backwards.

#### **Seat Height**



- To lower the seat cushion, push the switch downwards.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the switch upwards.

See Power Seat Adjustment ⇒ 36.

# Head Restraint Adjustment



- To raise the head restraint, pull the head restraint upwards.
- To lower the head restraint, press the button and push the head restraint downwards.

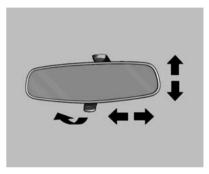
# **Safety Belts**



- 1. Withdraw the belt from the reel.
- Pull the metal tongue across your body into the buckle, until it clicks into place.
- Tension the lap belt regularly while driving by tugging the shoulder belt.

See Seat Belts  $\Rightarrow$  42 and Airbag System  $\Rightarrow$  45.

# Mirror Adjustment Interior Mirror



The adjustment is performed by tilting it to a suitable position.

Adjust the lever below the mirror to reduce headlamp glare from following vehicles.

#### **Exterior Mirrors**



The control for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door.

Select the relevant exterior mirror and adjust it.

See Power Mirrors ⇒ 25, Convex Mirrors ⇒ 26, or Folding Mirrors ⇒ 26.

# Steering Wheel Adjustment



- To unlock, move the lever down.
- 2. Adjust the steering wheel.
- 3. To lock, move the lever up.
- Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

See Steering Wheel Adjustment ⇒ 66, Airbag System ⇒ 45, or Ignition Positions ⇒ 191.

# **Exterior Lighting**



(b): With automatic light system, turn the switch to activate or deactivate the system, switch turns back to **AUTO** 

**AUTO**: Headlights and exterior lights are switched on and off automatically depending on external lighting conditions

2005: Sidelights, number plate lights and instrument panel lamps are illuminated

D: Headlights

#### **High Beam/Low Beam**



- To flash the headlamps, pull the lever.
- To switch from low to high beam, push the lever.
- To switch to low beam, push again or pull the lever.

#### **Turn and Lane-Change Signals**



- Push the lever in the direction the steering wheel is turned.
- A green arrow on the instrument panel flashes when the lamps are in operation.

#### **Hazard Warning Flashers**



 Press to turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, when the ignition is in any position.

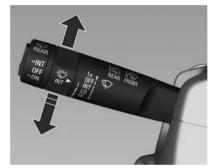
#### Horn



Press 🔂.

# Washer and Wiper Systems

#### Windscreen Wipers



1x: Single wipe

OFF: Off

**INT**: Intermittent operation

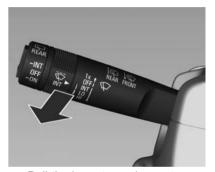
LO: Continuous wipe, slow speed

HI: Continuous wipe, fast speed

For a single wipe when the windscreen wipers are off, move the lever up lightly and release it.

See Windshield Wiper/Washer \$\phi\$ 68 and Wiper Blade Replacement \$\phi\$ 240.

#### Windscreen Washer

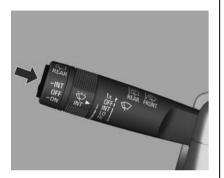


 Pull the lever towards you to wash the windscreen.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wipers operate.

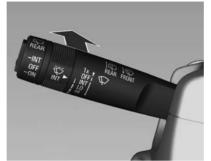
See Windshield Wiper/Washer ⇒ 68 and Washer Fluid ⇒ 237.

#### Rear Window Wiper/Washer



To activate the rear window wiper/ washer:

- Press the lower position for continuous operation
- Press the upper position for intermittent operation
- Press the middle position to turn off



To wash the rear window:

 Push the lever forwards
 Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper operates.

## **Climate Controls**





The climate control panel is located in the centre of the instrument panel.

See Climate Control Systems 

↑ 180 or Electronic Climate Control System 

↑ 182.

#### **Transmission**

#### **Transmission**



P : Park

R: Reverse

**N**: Neutral **D**: Drive

The shift lever can only be moved out of **P** when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied.

To engage **P** or **R**, push the release button on the front of the shift lever.

Manual mode: Move the shift lever to position **D**, then push to the left.

- +: higher gear
- -: lower gear

See Automatic Transmission ⇒ 196 and Four-Wheel Drive ⇒ 198.

# **Parking**

- Always apply the parking brake firmly without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill gradient. Apply foot brake before applying the parking brake to reduce operating force.
- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the ignition key to LOCK (0), remove it and turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, move the shift lever to **P** position and remove the key.

If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill gradient, engage first gear or set the shift lever to P before switching off the ignition. On an uphill gradient, turn the front wheels away from the curb.

If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to **P** before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the curb.

- Close the windows.
- Lock the vehicle.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system, if available, see Anti-theft Alarm System 

   24.
- For vehicles with a diesel engine, after running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for about 1 to 2 minutes at idle speed before switching off in order to protect the turbocharger.

#### 16 In Brief

 For vehicles with a diesel engine, before switching off, do not accelerate.

# ⚠ Warning

Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.

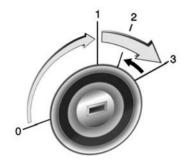
# **Getting Started**

#### **Check Before Starting**

- Check that windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.
- Visually check tyre inflation. Check the tyre pressures weekly.
- Ensure that all doors are closed and secured.
- Position your seat for comfortable driving.
- Adjust rear view mirrors.
- Fasten seat belts.

 Check that the warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on.

#### Starting the Engine



# **⚠** Warning

Do not turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for brakes or steering.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

Never remove the key while the vehicle is moving, as this will lock the steering.

- **0**: (LOCK) The key can only be inserted and removed from this position.
- 1: (ACC) When the key is in this position, the audio system operates.
- 2: (ON) Turn the key to this position for preheating, until  $\mathfrak{W}$  goes out.

When the key is in this position, the engine is ready to start and all electrical systems are active.

Do not leave the switch in this position for a long time, unless the engine is running, otherwise the vehicle's battery will discharge.

**3**: (START) Turn the key to this position and release when the engine is running.

# Keys, Doors, and Windows

<b>Keys and Locks</b> Keys 1	7
Remote Vehicle Start	
Manual Door Locks 2	1
Central Locking System 2 Safety Locks 2	
<b>Doors</b> Tailgate	23
Vehicle Security Anti-theft Alarm System	
Exterior Mirrors	
Convex Mirrors	25
Interior Mirrors	
Manual Rearview Mirror 2 Automatic Dimming Rearview	27
Mirror (If equipped) 2	7

#### **Windows**

Power Windows	2
Heated Rear Window	2
Sun Visors	3

# **Keys and Locks**

# **Keys**

#### Caution

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.



The key operates all doors and the ignition.

 Unlock all doors and the tailgate by pressing once.

The hazard lamps flash twice.

- Press and hold at to automatically open all windows.
- Press at to lock all doors and the tailgate.

The hazard lamps flash once and any open windows automatically close.

These features can be customized through the Infotainment System.

If any door, the bonnet or the rear hatch is not closed properly. the central locking system will not work and a dual horn chirp will be issued as a warning.

#### Foldaway key blade



- Press button to extend the key blade.
- 2. To retract the key blade, press the button and fold the blade into the key.

#### About the kevs

- The remote control has a range of up to 20 metres.
- The range depends on the charge of the key battery, on ambient conditions, the key's location and the area between them.

- Take care that no button is pressed unintentionally. especially when the vehicle is out of sight.
- Protect from moisture and high temperatures.

#### The key buttons may not work if

- More than 20 metres from the vehicle.
- Battery voltage is too low. See Battery replacement under
- The key buttons are operated repeatedly while not in range of the vehicle.
- The central locking system is operated at frequent intervals.
- The power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- The vehicle is parked near strong radio activity.

#### Replacement keys

If a key is lost, a replacement can be ordered through any Holden Dealer.

#### **Remote Vehicle Start**



If equipped, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

**Q** (Remote Vehicle Start): This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear defog may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Control* ⇒ 20.

#### Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote start feature:

- 1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
- 2. Press and release 🕣
- Immediately after completing
   Step 2, press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash. The turn signal lamps flashing confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

When the engine starts, the park lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once.

If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle, turn the ignition switch ON. If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle, start the engine normally.

#### **Extending Engine Run Time**

For a 10-minute extension, repeat Steps 1–3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

When the remote start is extended, the second 10 minutes will start immediately.

For example, if the engine has been running for five minutes, and 10 minutes are added, the engine will run for a total of 15 minutes.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

#### Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKF transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold  $\Omega$ until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

#### **Conditions in Which Remote Start** Will Not Work

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The key is in the ignition.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- The malfunction indicator lamp is on.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.

- Two remote vehicle starts, or a single remote start with an extension, have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

#### Remote Control

#### **Battery Replacement**

As soon as the range of the remote control reduces, replace the battery:

Replace battery in remote key is also displayed on the instrument panel when the battery requires replacing.



Use CR2032 (or equivalent) battery.

- Open the cover.
- Remove the used battery.
- Install the new battery. Place the negative side (-) down towards the base
- Close the cover.
- Check the key operation.

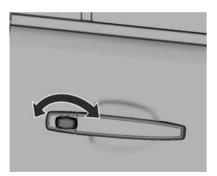
#### Note

- Batteries do not belong in household waste. Dispose of at an appropriate recycling collection point.
- Avoid dropping the transmitter.
- Do not place heavy objects on the transmitter.
- Keep the transmitter away from water and direct sunlight.
- If the transmitter gets wet, wipe it with a soft cloth.

#### Caution

Avoid touching the flat surfaces of the battery, the circuit board and other components inside the remote control with bare fingers. Handling will shorten battery life.

#### **Manual Door Locks**



- Insert the key into the door lock.
- Turn the key clockwise to lock all doors.
- Turn the key anticlockwise to unlock the driver's door.

#### Note

Tap the key slot or heat the key if the door does not unlock in cold weather.

#### **Door Lock Snibs**



- To lock all doors from the inside, push the door lock snib so it is flush with the door handle.
- To unlock any door from the inside, pull the door lock snib outwards.
- The driver's door lock snib does not operate when the door is open.

#### Note

Do not operate the switches constantly.

## **Central Locking System**

Doors may be locked and unlocked by pressing buttons on:

- The driver's door armrest
- The key from inside or outside the vehicle

#### Note

- The driver's door must be closed for the driver's door to lock.
- A horn chirp may sound as a reminder if a door is not closed.
- Pulling on an interior door handle will not unlock a door unless an unlock button has been pressed.

#### **Central locking button**



Locks and unlocks all doors.

- Press at to lock.
- Press at to unlock.

## **Safety Locks**



# **⚠** Warning

Use the child security door locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

The child security rear door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Rotate the switch using a key or suitable screwdriver.

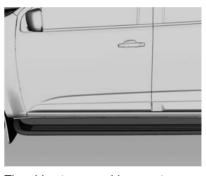
To activate:

 Rotate the switch in the direction of the arrow shown on the door.

To open a door when the child security rear door lock is activated:

Open the door from the outside.

## Side Steps



The side steps provide an extra foothold for accessing the front or rear doors.

#### **Doors**

## **Tailgate**

# **⚠** Danger

It can be very dangerous to drive with the tailgate open. Carbon monoxide (CO) gas can enter the vehicle. You cannot see or smell CO. It can cause

If you must drive with the tailgate open, make sure all other windows are closed and switch the fan on to the highest speed using any setting that brings in outside air. Doing this will force outside air into the vehicle.

#### Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check the area above and behind for obstructions, to avoid damage to the tailgate.

#### Note

Adding heavy accessories to the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

#### **Opening**

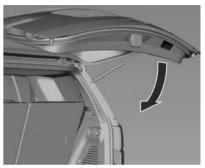


- Push the touchpad button on the tailgate.
- Pull the handle upwards to open.

#### Note

If the tailgate is open when the ignition is turned on, a message is displayed in the DIC and a chime sounds.

#### Closing



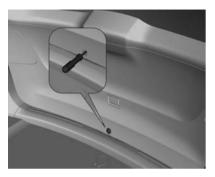
Pull the interior handle downwards so the tailgate latches securely.

#### Note

Do not operate the touchpad button below the number plate while closing, as this will unlatch the tailgate or open it again.

#### **Manual Tailgate Release**

If the battery has been disconnected or is flat the tailgate unlock button will not operate.



#### To open the tailgate:

- Remove the interior trim cover from the central latch area.
- Using a screwdriver, push inwards as far as possible and turn anticlockwise.

# **Vehicle Security**

## **Anti-theft Alarm System**

The system monitors the doors, ignition, bonnet and tailgate.

The system is activated:

- Thirty seconds after locking the vehicle.
- Alternatively, by pressing a second time.

The system is deactivated by:

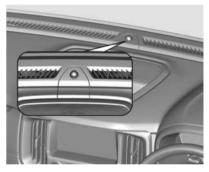
Pressing on the key.

#### Note

- If the driver's door is opened manually, while the alarm is activated, the key needs to be inserted into the ignition within 10 seconds to avoid triggering the alarm. During the 10 seconds, the horn chirps and the hazard warning flashers activate to provide a warning.
- When the alarm is triggered, the horn sounds and the hazard warning flashers activate for 30 seconds.

 If the alarm was triggered during alarm activation, the horn will sound three times and the hazard warning flashers will activate three times.

#### **Status LED**



The status LED is located on top of the instrument panel.

During the first 30 seconds of system activation:

LED illuminates (test, arming delay).

 LED flashes quickly (doors or bonnet are not completely closed, or there is a system fault).

When the system is armed:

LED flashes slowly.

If a fault occurs, contact a Holden Dealer.

#### **Immobiliser**

The immobiliser prevents unauthorised engine starting.

 If an invalid key is inserted into the ignition switch/lock, an indicator on the instrument panel will flash.

The vehicle will not start.

- The engine is automatically immobilised after the key is turned to LOCK and has been removed from the ignition switch/lock.
- Only valid ignition keys can be used to start the engine.

If n flashes or illuminates when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system. The engine cannot be started. Turn the ignition off and on again.

If the control indicator continues to flash or illuminate, try to start the engine using the spare key.

Have the vehicle checked by a Holden Dealer.

#### Note

The immobiliser does not lock the doors.

## **Exterior Mirrors**

#### **Convex Mirrors**

The convex exterior mirrors provide a wider view of the road and traffic.

# **⚠** Warning

Objects seen in these mirrors are closer than they appear.

#### **Power Mirrors**



Adjust the driver's or passenger's side mirror.

L: Left side mirror selected

R: Right side mirror selected

: No mirrors selected

To adjust an exterior mirror:

- 1. Push the switch to L or R.
- Press the directional switch to adjust the angle of the mirror.

# Folding Mirrors Manual Folding

The vehicle may have manual folding mirrors.



When the vehicle is parked, the mirrors may be folded flat against the side of the vehicle.

#### **Electric Folding**

The vehicle may have electric folding mirrors.



Press the selector switch (L / R switch) to the central position ● then push the four-way switch down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Press the four-way switch down again – both exterior mirrors return to their original position.

If one mirror has been manually extended or folded, the other mirror can be extended or folded electronically by pressing the fourway switch down.

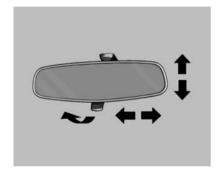
#### Note

If both mirrors are folded, push the four-way switch down to guarantee the correct unfold position before driving.

# **Marning**

Always keep your mirrors properly adjusted, and use them while driving to increase your visibility of objects and other vehicles around you. Do not drive while either outside rear view mirror is folded back.

# Interior Mirrors Manual Rearview Mirror Manual Anti-glare



#### Caution

The inner rear view mirror can be moved in four directions, so be cautious and avoid the contact with the sun visors. Adjust all mirrors in the most effective position before starting to drive the vehicle.

To reduce headlamp glare from following vehicles, pull the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

# Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror (If equipped)



Headlamp glare from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

#### **Windows**

#### **Power Windows**

# **⚠** Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Be careful when closing the windows. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Power windows can be operated.

- With ignition on.
- Within 10 minutes after switching to position 1 – ignition off.

After switching off the ignition, window operation is disabled when any door is opened.



Operate the switch for each respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close. The switch for the driver's window has a light which signals, through illumination, the operation readiness.

#### Auto Up/Down

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch fully down. To fully close the window automatically, pull the switch fully up. In automatic operation, the window will fully open or close even if you let go of the switch.

To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in automatic operation, pull up or press down and release the switch to the same direction of the movement.

#### **Anti-pinch Function**

If the windows encounters any resistance during auto closing, it will stop immediately and open again.

# **⚠** Warning

Anti-pinch function may not operate after consecutive uses. Do not operate the window switch with no purpose.

## Override Safety Function

In an emergency, the anti-pinch feature can be overridden in a supervised mode. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is re-activated. In this mode,

the window can still close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

# ⚠ Warning

Body parts outside the vehicle can be struck by passing objects. Keep all parts of the body inside vehicle.

Children can operate and become entrapped in power windows.

Do not leave your keys or unattended children in your car.

Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of power windows.

#### **Pressure Relief**

To reduce the effort required to close the front door, when a front door is opened, if closed its window will automatically lower several centimetres. Once the door is closed, the window will raise automatically.

If a window fails to close, a horn chirp may sound.

# Child Safety System for Windows



Press switch to deactivate the power windows of the rear doors. The other power windows can be operated by switches on the driver's door

#### Remote Power Window Opening/Closing

The power windows can be opened or closed using the RKE transmitter.

See Keys \$ 17.

#### Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

#### Initialising the Power Windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), activate the window electronics as follows:

- 1. Switch the ignition on.
- Press the button for 2 seconds to move the window down.
- Press the button to move the window up and close it completely. Keep holding the switch pulled for additional 2 seconds after the window regulator stops at the top position.

#### **Heated Rear Window**



**Electronic Control** 

Operated by pressing the REAR button.



**Manual Control** 

Operated by pressing the ## button.

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time or by pressing the button again.

The **LED** lights up to indicate that it is on.

#### Caution

Do not use sharp instruments or abrasive window cleaners on your vehicle's rear window.

(Continued)

#### Caution (Continued)

Do not scratch or damage the defroster wires when you clean or work around the rear window.

#### **Sun Visors**



- The sun visors can be folded down or folded outwards over the side window, to prevent glare.
- If the sun visor has a mirror, close the cover when driving.

# **Marning**

Do not place the sun visor in such a position that it reduces visibility of the roadway, traffic or other objects.

## **Assist grips**



The vehicle may have assist grips.

- Assist grips are located above the doors to assist passengers getting in and out of the vehicle.
- The assist grips above each rear door may include a coat hook.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not hold onto the assist grips while seated in the vehicle.

# Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints Head Restraints	32
Front Seats Seat Position Seat Adjustment Power Seat Adjustment Heated Front Seats	34 36
Rear Seats Rear Seats Second Row Seats Third Row Seats	38
Seat Belts Seat Belts Three-Point Seat Belt Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy Safety Belt Care	43 44
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash	45

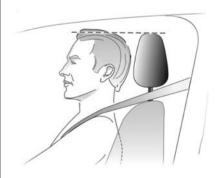
Curtain Airbag System	
Child Restraints	
Child Restraint Systems	50
Where to Put the Restraint	52
ISOFIX Child Restraint	
Systems	53
Top-Tether Child Restraint	
Systems	54

## **Head Restraints**

# **⚠** Warning

This safety feature is not intended to rest the head upon. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.



# Height Adjustment Head Restraints on Front Seats



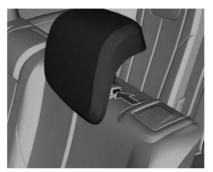
- Pull the head restraint up.
- To move down, press the locking button and push the head restraint downwards.

#### **Head Restraints on Rear Seats**

# **Marning**

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

# Height Adjustment Second Row Seats



- Pull the head restraint up.
- To move down, press the locking button and push the head restraint downwards.



- Pull the head restraint up.
- To move down, press the locking button and push the head restraint downwards.

# Height Adjustment Third Row Seats



- Pull the head restraint up.
- To move down, press the locking button and push the head restraint downwards.

# Front Seats Seat Position

# **⚠** Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.



- Sit centrally in the seat.
- Use the backrest and cushion for support.

- Adjust the seat so that your legs are slightly angled when against the pedals.
- Adjust the backrest angle to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. See Steering Wheel Adjustment ⇒ 66.
- Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel.
- Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible.

## **Seat Adjustment**

# **⚠** Danger

Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

# **⚠** Danger

Never place objects of any size or shape under the front seats, because they can interfere with the moving mechanisms, other parts of the seat structure, or electrical components, when available, reducing or restricting the correct performance of these components and the safety system.

# **⚠** Danger

Never place your hands, fingers, feet or other body parts under the seat when adjusting the seat position, because the seats have moving parts and metal pieces that could cause injury.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

### **Seat Positioning**



- Move the seat forwards or backwards by lifting the handle at the front and sliding the seat.
- 2. Release the handle to engage the latch.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

### **Seat Backrests**



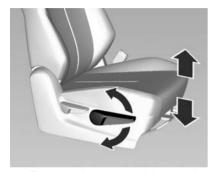
- Recline the seatback by pulling the lever.
- 2. Adjust the angle and release the lever.
- 3. Allow the seat to engage.

### Note

Do not lean on the seat when adjusting.

### **Seat Height**

The vehicle may have seat height adjustment.



- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

# Power Seat Adjustment Seat Positioning

The vehicle may have power seat adjustment.



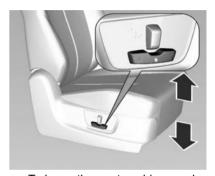
 Move the seat forwards or backwards by sliding the switch.

### **Seat Backrests**



 Recline the seatback by sliding the switch forwards or backwards.

### **Seat Height**



- To lower the seat cushion, push the switch downwards.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the switch upwards.

### **Heated Front Seats**

The vehicle may have heated front seats.



### To warm the seat:

- 1. Start the engine.
- 2. Press the switch \\.

Low heat setting - 1 LED illuminates

High heat setting - 2 LEDs illuminate

#### To turn the heater off:

Return the switch ₩ to the centre position.

LEDs extinguish

# **⚠** Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (including genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.

### **Rear Seats**

# **⚠** Danger

Ensure the rear seatbacks are securely in place.

Ensure the head restraints are adjusted correctly. The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

Do not adjust the rear seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

Ensure all luggage and objects in the passenger compartment are secured.

### Caution

Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback to the upright position.

### **Second Row Seats**



To adjust the seat back:

- 1. Pull the lever.
- 2. Adjust the seat back.
- 3. Release the lever and allow the seat back to engage.



# **Marning**

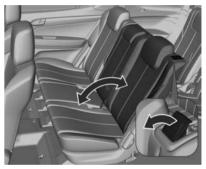
When second row seats are being adjusted, folded or tumbled, keep hands, arms, legs and feet away from moving parts.

Ensure seats are fully engaged before driving.

### Caution

Never sit on or place objects higher than the seats when they are in the tumbled position. To allow access to the third row seats, fold the second row seats forwards:

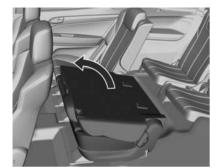
1. Push the head restraints down to their lowest position.



- Unhook the seat belts and return them to their stowed position.
- Pull the release lever and fold the seat back forwards.

### Caution

Never fold the seat backrest when the seat belts are buckled or pulled out.



- 4. Move the seat towards the front.
- 5. Fold up against the front seats.



Seat position instructions are displayed on the back of the seats.

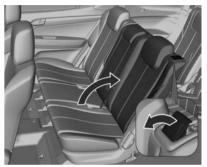


### Note

- Do not place feet or legs on a folded seat (1).
- Do not keep the second row folded when passengers are seated in the third row or while the vehicle is moving (2).
- Be careful when tumbling the second row seats when passengers are seated in the third row (3).
- Correct position of the second and third row seats when travelling (4).

To raise the second row seats:

Raise the seat back rearwards.



- 2. Pull the release lever and raise the seat back until it engages.
- 3. Adjust the head restraints. See *Head Restraints* \$\dip\$ 32.

### **Third Row Seats**

To fold the third row seats forwards:

- 1. Push the head restraints down to their lowest position.
- Unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their stowed position.

### Caution

Never fold the seat backrest when the seat belts are buckled or pulled out.



Guide the seat belts through the belt holders.

### Note

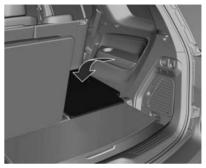
If the third row seats are unoccupied, guide the seat belts through the belt holders to avoid rattling while driving.



From the rear of the vehicle. pull the strap and release.

# ⚠ Warning

Never hang or load any objects on pull straps of the third Row Seats.



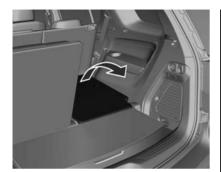
5. Push the seat back forwards.

To raise the third row seats:

1. Guide the seat belts through the belt holders.

# ⚠ Warning

Ensure the seat belts are removed from the belt holders when the seat is occupied.



- From the rear of the vehicle, pull the strap rearwards until the seat back engages.
- 3. Adjust the head restraints. See *Head Restraints* \$\dip 32.

# **⚠** Warning

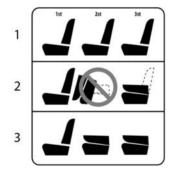
Removing second and/or third row seats is not recommended. If the seats must be removed, contact a Holden Dealer. Incorrect disassembly may cause serious injuries.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

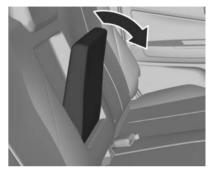
If a cargo barrier is installed, the third row seats should not be occupied.

### **Seat Positioning**



- The correct seat configuration for passengers (1).
- This configuration should only be used for access to the third row seats (2).
- The correct configuration for cargo placement (3).

### **Armrest**



Unfold the armrest by pulling downwards from the top.

### **Seat Belts**



# **Marning**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack,

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

The belts lock during heavy acceleration or deceleration for the safety of the occupants.

#### Note

Make sure that the belts are neither damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

#### **Belt Force Limiters**

On front seat three point belts, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

#### **Belt Tensioners**

In the event of a front, side or rear collision of a certain severity, the driver's and/or front passenger's three point seat belts are tightened.

# **Marning**

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts or belt buckles) can deploy the belt tensioners with risk of injury.

- When the belt tensioners have been deployed, illuminates on the instrument panel. See Safety Belt Reminders 

   74.
- Deployed belt tensioners must be replaced.
- Belt tensioners are only triggered once.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not attach or install objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt tensioners.

Do not make any modifications to belt tensioner components.

# Three-Point Seat Belt Fitting



Withdraw the belt from the reel, guide it untwisted across the body and push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Tension the lap belt regularly while driving by tugging the shoulder belt.



Loose or bulky clothing hinders the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

# **⚠** Danger

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

### **Height Adjustment**



- 1. Pull the belt out slightly.
- 2. Pull the button.
- 3. Adjust height and engage.

# ⚠ Warning

Adjust the height so that the belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm.

Do not adjust while driving.

### Removing



To release the belt, press the red button on the belt buckle.

The belt will automatically return to its original position, if required pull the buckle downward and then release it, so that the belt will be fully retracted.

# Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

# ⚠ Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

### **Safety Belt Care**

Seat Belts should be properly cared for and maintained.

Do not make any changes to the seat belt system.

Verify that the belts have no sign of deterioration or have not been jammed by a sharp object.

Seat Belt hardware should be kept dry and free of dust or debris. As necessary, exterior hard surfaces and seat belt webbing may be lightly cleaned with mild soap and water. Ensure there is not excessive dust or debris in the mechanism. If dust or debris exists in the system please see the dealer. Parts may need to be replaced to ensure proper functionality of the system.

# **⚠** Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

### Caution

- The complete belt system should be inspected and verified by a technician on a regular basis.
- The seat belt, which was exposed to an accident, has to be replaced by a new one.

### Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash

# **⚠** Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

# Airbag System

When deployed, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

# **⚠** Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

# **Marning**

# WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats. See *Child Restraint* Systems  $\Rightarrow$  50.

# **⚠** Warning

Airbags are part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts. Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they

(Continued)

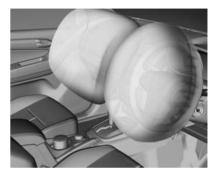
### Warning (Continued)

deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

# **Front Airbag System**



The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel, one in the instrument panel on the passenger's side and a knee airbag in the lower part of the driver's side instrument panel.

These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

# **⚠** Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

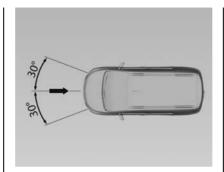
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

# **Marning**

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

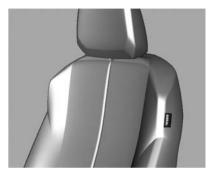
Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

# **Side Airbag System**



Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) are stored in the sides of the front seats, the side closest to the door.

SIAB are identified by the labels with the words **SRS AIRBAG** on the seatback.



SIAB deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the SIAB in all serious accidents.

A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIAB are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

# **Marning**

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

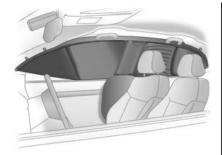
Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

### **Curtain Airbag System**



- Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle.
- They can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.



- The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts.
- The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates.

Refer to the illustration.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

# Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

#### Note

After an accident where airbags have deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

# The airbag system should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

# Child Restraints Child Restraint Systems

# **⚠** Warning

# WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



# **Marning**

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers and pets are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia and New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.

# **⚠** Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

# Child Restraint Seat Belt Locking Feature

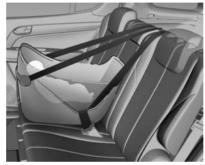
The second row seat belts have a child restraint locking feature.

When engaged, this feature prevents the seat belt from being loosened without releasing the buckle.

### To engage:

- Clip the metal tongue into the buckle.
- Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
- To tighten the belt around the installed child seat, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
- Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 2 to 4.
- To remove, press the release button on the buckle and allow the belt to fully retract.

# Selecting the Right System Infants



Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

### Young Children



Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

#### **Booster Seats**



Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

# **Marning**

Always move the passenger's seat as far back as it will go before installing a booster seat. This locates the child as far from the passenger's airbag as possible.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

### Older Children



A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

 They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.

- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

# Where to Put the Restraint

# ⚠ Warning

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fittings are to be used. Other types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Child restraints located in the second row must be attached to the child restraint anchorage points, located behind the second row rear seatbacks.

Do not place child restraints on the third row seats.

### Note

If unsure about installing a child restraint, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

# ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

### Note

Ensure that seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the seatback, as shown. In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the

# Top-Tether Child Restraint Systems



A. Front of vehicle

The child restraint tether anchors are located at the rear of the second row rear seats in line with the three, second row seating positions.

### Note

Use the child restraint anchors for their designed purpose only.

### **Single Tether Anchor**



#### Note

If the child restraint has a single tether anchor, lift the headrest and pass the tether anchor between the headrest rods.

### **Double Tether Anchor**



#### Note

If the child restraint has a double tether anchor, lift the headrest and pass the tether anchor around the headrest rods.

### Child restraint installation

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitment carefully.

The child restraint system should be secured in conjunction with the vehicle's seat belt.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

# **Storage**

Storage Compartments Instrument Panel Storage Glove Box Cupholders Sunglasses Storage Armrest Storage (Auxiliary	. 57 . 57 . 58
Cable Route)	
Additional Storage Features	
Boot Cover	
	. 60

# Storage Compartments

# **Instrument Panel Storage**

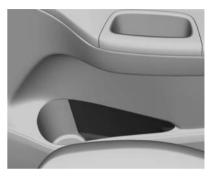


Instrument panel upper storage.

### Caution

Do not leave glasses, CDs, CD cases or flammable items, e.g. cigarette lighter, in the tray when the vehicle is parked in direct sun exposure or at high ambient temperatures as the tray may become very hot.

### **Front Storage**



A storage compartment is located within each door.



A bottle holder is located at the front of the door storage compartment.



The vehicle may have a storage compartment located between the front seats.

### **Glove Box**



To open, pull the handle.

# **⚠** Warning

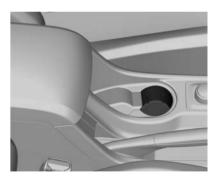
To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glovebox door closed while driving.

### **Cupholders**

# **⚠** Warning

To avoid scalding, never place hot drinks in the cup holders.

Do not place uncovered containers of liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.



The vehicle may have cupholders located in the centre console, between the front seats.



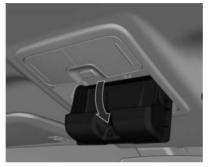
Cupholders are located in the second row armrest.

To access, fold the armrest down.



Cupholders are located at each side of the third row.

### **Sunglasses Storage**



**To open :** Push the rear part of the cover.

**To close:** Pull up cover and push it until it latches into place.

Do not use it to store heavy objects.

# **Armrest Storage**



Press the latch and lift the armrest lid upward.

# Armrest Storage (Auxiliary Cable Route)



The armrest has a conduit for an auxiliary cable.



Use the conduit shown above to prevent pinching the auxiliary cable when the console armrest is down and the cable is in use.

# Rear Storage Third Row Storage

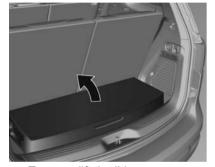




### 60 Storage

Storage compartments are located in the third row.

# Load Compartment Storage Box



- To open, lift the lid.
- The load compartment cover can be stored inside the storage box when not in use.

# Additional Storage Features

### **Boot Cover**

The vehicle may have a load compartment cover.

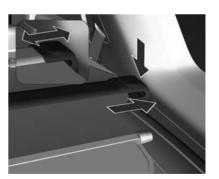
# ⚠ Warning

Do not place any items on top of the cargo blind.

Do not allow any items underneath to contact the cargo blind.



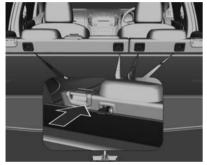
1. Guide the seat belts through the belt holders.



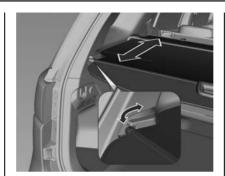
To install the cover:

2. Fold the third row of seats.

- Insert the cover into the recess on the driver's side.
- Insert the cover into the recess on the passenger's side to engage.



Push the cover forwards and engage it in the hooks on the back of the second row seats.

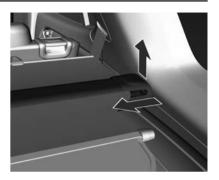


To extend the cover:

- Use the handle to pull the cover rearwards.
- 7. Engage the cover in the latches on either side.

To retract the cover:

- 3. Use the handle to pull the cover rearwards slightly.
- 9. Gently roll the cover up while holding the handle.

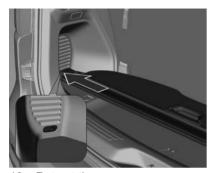


To remove the cover:

- 10. Retract the cover.
- 11. Pull the bar at each side of the cover towards the centre.
- 12. Lift and remove the cover from the side recesses.

To stow the cover:

When not in use, stow the cover in the recess in the load compartment storage box.



- Retract the cover.
- Ensure the top is facing upwards, then insert the cover into the recess on the passenger's side.
- 15. Insert the cover into the recess on the driver's side to engage.

#### Note

Pull the cover handle rearwards to fit the cover into the storage box and allow the lid to close.

 To release the cover remove one side of the cover, then the other side.

# **Roof Rack System**

- Distribute the load evenly and secure tightly with straps.
- When carrying loads on the roof rack (elevated load), avoid hard braking, abrupt swerving or sharp steering.

Roof rack elevated loads alter the vehicle's road handling.

# **⚠** Warning

The total elevated load, including the weight of the cross bars, must not exceed 100 kg.

Distribute the load evenly.

#### Note

The weight of the cross bars and the load must be included when calculating the total vehicle load.

# Information on Loading the Vehicle

# **⚠** Danger

Do not stack objects higher than the front seats.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Serious injuries or death can result.

- Secure objects to prevent from sliding or being thrown out.
- Distribute load weight evenly.
- Adjust the tyre pressures and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

See *Tyre Pressure* ⇒ 282.

- Place heavier objects at the bottom.
- Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Do not exceed the maximum load weights.

- Do not place any objects on the instrument panel.
- Ensure the backrests are securely engaged.
- Do not place unsecured objects in the passenger compartment.

Instruments	and
Controls	

Instrument Panel Overview Instrument Panel Overview	65
Controls Steering Wheel Adjustment Steering Wheel Controls Horn Windshield Wiper/Washer Rear Window Wiper/Washer Power Outlets	67 67 68 69
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators	71
Odometer	72 72 72
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge Turn Signal Safety Belt Reminders Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light	73 74
•	

Charging System Light	75
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	
Brake and Clutch System	
Warning Light	75
Antilock Brake System (ABS)	
Warning Light	76
Four-Wheel-Drive Light	
Descent Control System	76
Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	
Light	77
Vehicle Ahead Indicator	77
Electronic Stability Control	
(ESC) Indicator Light	77
Electronic Stability Control	
(ESC) Off Light	77
Traction Control System	
_Warning Light	77
Traction Control System (TCS)	
Off Light	78
Pre-Heat Light	78
Tire Pressure Monitoring	
_System Light	78
Engine Oil Pressure Light	
Low Fuel Warning Light	
Immobiliser Light	
High-Beam On Light	79
Front Fog Lamp Light	
Rear Fog Light (If equipped)	
Lamps On Reminder	
Cruise Control Light	80
Trailer Indicator Light	80

Information Displays
Driver Information
Centre (DIC) 80
Vehicle Messages
Vehicle Messages 81
Warning Chimes 81
Battery Voltage and Charging
Messages 81
Brake System Messages 82
Cruise Control Messages 82
Door Ajar Messages 82
Engine Cooling System
Messages 82
Engine Oil Messages 83
Engine Power Messages 83
Fuel System Messages 83
Diesel Particulate Filter
Messages 83
Key and Lock Messages 84
Lamp Messages 84
Object Detection System
Messages 84
Ride Control System
Messages 84
Airbag System Messages 84
Anti-theft Alarm System
Messages 84
Service Vehicle Messages 85
Steering System Messages 85
Tyre Messages 85

Transmission Messages	
Vehicle Reminder Messages	87
Vehicle Speed Messages	87
Trip Computer Trip Computer	87
Vehicle Personalisation	
Vehicle Personalisation	90

### **Instrument Panel Overview**



### Note

Not all indicators may be available.

### 66 Instruments and Controls

- 22. High-Beam On Light ➪ 79

### **Controls**

# Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

# **Steering Wheel Controls**



The infotainment system can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.



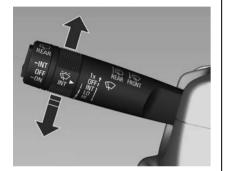
The Cruise Control and the Forward Collision Alert can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.

### Horn



Press .

# Windshield Wiper/Washer Windscreen Wiper



### Caution

Do not operate the windscreen wipers on dry glass or when covered with snow or ice, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

1x: Single wipe

OFF: Off

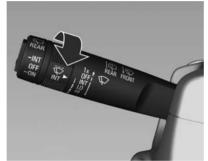
**INT**: Intermittent operation

LO: Continuous wipe, slow speed

HI: Continuous wipe, fast speed

For a single wipe of the windscreen when the windscreen wipers are off, push the lever upwards.

### **Adjustable Wiper Interval**



During intermittent operation, adjust the wiper interval:

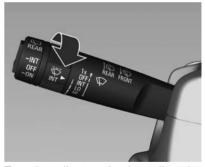
- For frequent intervals, rotate the wheel downwards.
- For longer intervals, rotate the wheel upwards.

# Automatic wiping with rain sensor (If equipped)

**INT**: automatic wiping with rain sensor

The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

# Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor (If equipped)



Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity:

**Low sensitivity**: Turn adjuster wheel upwards

**High sensitivity :** Turn adjuster wheel downwards

### Caution

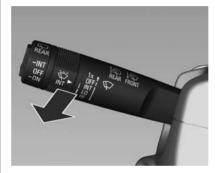
Switch off the windscreen wiper and automatic operation with rain sensor in car washes.



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

If you move the wiper to rain sensor mode or turn the adjuster wheel from low sensitivity to high sensitivity when the ignition is switched on, the windscreen wipers operate once to check the system.

### Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever rearwards to wash the windscreen.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wipers operate.

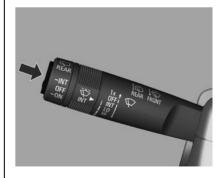
#### Caution

Do not operate the windscreen washer for more than a few seconds or when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Do not spray washer fluid on the windscreen in freezing weather.

Switch the wipers off when in a car wash.

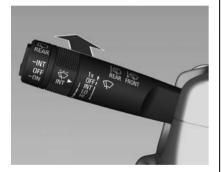
### Rear Window Wiper/ Washer



### 70 Instruments and Controls

To activate the rear window wiper/ washer:

- Press the lower position for continuous operation.
- Press the upper position for intermittent operation.
- Return to the middle position to turn off.



To wash the rear window:

Push the lever forwards.
 Washer fluid is sprayed or

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wipers operate.

#### Note

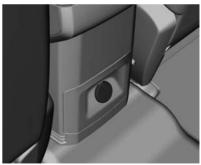
### Caution

Do not use the rear window wiper/washer if the rear window is frozen.

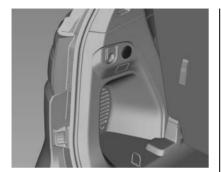
Switch the wipers off when in a car wash.

### **Power Outlets**





The 12V power outlets are located in front of the shift lever and at the rear of the centre console.



A power outlet is located on the passenger side of the load compartment.

Pull the cap outwards to use and replace when not in use.

## ⚠ Warning

It is dangerous for the driver of a vehicle to attach or remove accessories from the power socket while driving. It may distract the driver's attention, putting the occupants of the vehicle and other road users at risk

- Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.
- The power outlet is deactivated 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off or a door is opened.
- The power outlet does not operate if the battery voltage is low.
- Do not connect electrical charging devices or batteries.

# Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

The following warning lights and reminders may appear on the instrument panel.

A chime sounds with most warning lights and indicators.

# **Speedometer**



Shows vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

#### Odometer



Shows distance travelled in kilometres.

# **Trip Odometer**

The Trip display shows the current distance travelled since the last reset of the trip odometer.

## **Tachometer**



Shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (RPM).

Drive at a low engine speed/range for each gear, as much as possible.

# **Marning**

Do not allow the needle to remain in the warning/red zone.

## **Fuel Gauge**



Shows the level of fuel in the tank. If the fuel level is low:

- illuminates.
- A chime sounds.
- A message is displayed. Refuel immediately.

# **⚠** Danger

Before refuelling, stop the vehicle and switch the engine off.

#### Note

- The arrow on the fuel gauge symbol indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.
- Never run the tank dry.
- If you operate the ignition switch while refuelling, the fuel gauge may not indicate the correct fuel level.
- On inclines, the fuel gauge may not indicate the correct fuel level due to movement of the fuel in the tank.

# **Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge**



Shows the engine coolant temperature.

Left area: Regular operating temperature not yet reached

**Central area:** Normal operating temperature

Right area: Temperature too high

If the engine is too hot, the gauge pointer will move toward the red area, a warning chime will activate, and the Driver Information Center will also display a message. Seek the assistance of a Holden Dealer.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not continue driving with the temperature gauge needle in the red area. The engine is too hot.

# **Turn Signal**

- Push the lever in the same direction the steering wheel is turned

♦ also flashes when the hazard warning is activated.

• If ⇔ flashes quickly, see Bulb Replacement ⇒ 240.

## Safety Belt Reminders



for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red.

When the ignition is switched on, this control indicator is activated and remains active for some seconds, to remind the driver to fasten the seat belt.

Soon after the ignition is switched on or the engine is started, the control indicator begins to flash, and also a chime sounds, for a few seconds. Then the control indicator stops flashing and illuminates until the driver seat belt is fastened.

Additionally, if the driver remains with the seat belt unfastened while the vehicle is moving, after reaching a specific distance or speed, a chime sounds and the control indicator flashes for several seconds.

If the driver seat belt is already fastened, neither the control indicator nor the chime comes on.

If Seat Belt Reminder is active the Rear Parking Assistance chime will not operate.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder (If equipped)



♦2 for passenger's seat illuminates or flashes red.

When the vehicle is started this light flashes and a chime may sound to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled.

This cycle continues several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving. If the passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

# Rear Passenger Safety Belt Reminder (If equipped)



\*\* for rear passenger's seat appears on Driver Information Center.

When the engine starts, the symbols will be displayed in the lower part of the DIC. If a rear seat belt is buckled, the corresponding symbol will dim.

Once the vehicle is travelling over 10 km/h for approximately 10 seconds, the symbols will extinguish. If a rear seat belt is unbuckled whilst driving, a chime will sound and the corresponding symbol will flash in the DIC.

# Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light

- The \* warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the \* warning light does not illuminate, does not extinguish after few seconds or illuminates while driving, there is a problem with the airbag or belt tensioner system.

# **Marning**

Have any fault in the airbag or belt tensioner system repaired immediately by a Holden Dealer. 

## **Charging System Light**

- The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the warning light illuminates while the engine is running, there is a problem with the charging system:
- 1. Stop the vehicle and switch off the engine.
- Contact a Holden Dealer.

# Malfunction Indicator Lamp

• The " warning light illuminates when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

- If the H warning light illuminates or flashes while driving, there is a problem with the emission monitoring system. Contact a Holden Dealer.
- The الله warning light may also illuminate to indicate there is a malfunction in the Diesel Particle Filter (DPF). Contact a Holden Dealer.
- To avoid serious damage to the vehicle, reduce vehicle speed, avoid hard acceleration, avoid steep uphill gradients and if towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo as soon as possible.

# Brake and Clutch System Warning Light

(!) illuminates red.

Illuminates when the parking brake is applied, if the brake fluid level is too low, or if there is a brake system failure, see *Brake Fluid* ⇒ 237.

## **⚠** Danger

If the brake system warning light illuminates, check the brake fluid level and contact an authorised dealer immediately.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low, do not drive the vehicle.

This may mean your brakes are not working properly. Driving with malfunctioning brakes can cause personal injuries and damage to your vehicle and other property.

Illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the manual parking brake is applied, see *Parking Brake* ⇒ 203.

If the parking brake has not been fully released and the vehicle is moving, after reaching a certain speed, the chime comes on and the Driver Information Centre also displays a message, see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* \$ 80.

# Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

 The (B) warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

### If the light:

- Does not flash or stays on when the ignition key is turned on.
- Remains on while driving.
   Carefully stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
- If both the and the hwarning lights illuminate, there is a problem with both the ABS and the regular brakes.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

#### Note

- The vehicle's brakes will still operate but without the assistance of the ABS.
- See Antilock Brake System (ABS) ⇒ 202.

## **Four-Wheel-Drive Light**

The four-wheel-drive light comes on when the transfer case is shifted into four-wheel drive and the front axle engages.

Some delay between the shifting and the light coming on is normal.

See Four-Wheel Drive.

## **Descent Control System**



a illuminates or flashes green.

Flashes to indicate that the Descent Control (DCS) is activated, reducing the vehicle's speed. This will happen in speeds between approximately 7 km/h and 30 km/h (manual transmission) or approximately 4 km/h and 30 km/h (automatic transmission).

Illuminates after pressing the button to indicate that the system is enabled if vehicle speed is below than 50 km/h.

# Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light

if equipped, this light, located in the center of the instrument panel, comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced.

This light is green if LDW is on and ready to operate.

This light changes to amber and flashes to indicate that the lane marking has been crossed without using a turn signal in that direction.

### **Vehicle Ahead Indicator**

f equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead.

The indicator will display amber when you are following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

# Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light

- The 
   warning light illuminates
  for a short time when the ignition
  is turned on to show that the
  light is working.
- The light flashes while driving, to show that the ESC is actively helping the vehicle with road grip and stability.
- If the light illuminates or does not extinguish while driving, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

 See Driver Information Centre (DIC) 

 ⇔ 80 and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 

 ⇒ 204.

# Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light

- The A warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the light does not illuminate, contact a Holden Dealer.
- \$\begin{align\*}
   \begin{align\*}
   \begin{

# Traction Control System Warning Light



रै illuminates or flashes amber.

#### Illuminates

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. If the system is working normally, the control indicator goes out.

If the indicator does not go out after a few seconds, there is a fault in the system. It is possible to keep driving without Traction Control System (TCS) activated.

Have the cause of the fault fixed by a Holden dealer.

#### **Flashes**

During ESC, TCS and/or TSC activation the DIC indicator will flash.

# Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light

(b) illuminates amber.

Illuminates when the system is deactivated.

## **Pre-Heat Light**

- When the ignition key is turned ON, W illuminates and will stay illuminated until the engine is sufficiently warmed.
- The preheating system switches on only if the outside temperature is low.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light

① For vehicles with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tyre pressures and the TPMS.

## When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tyres are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Centre (DIC) tyre pressure message may also display. See *Tyre Messages* \$\dip 85\$. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure* \$\dip 253\$.

# When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* \$\dip 256.

# **Engine Oil Pressure Light**

 The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working. If the light illuminates while driving:

- The oil pressure is dangerously low.
  - Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check the engine oil level.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the light illuminated. Contact a Holden Dealer.

#### Caution

Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by the nearest Holden Dealer.

## Low Fuel Warning Light

 The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

- The light illuminates when the fuel tank is approaching empty.
   Add fuel as soon as possible.
- If the engine is run to empty, the fuel system must be bled. See Diesel Fuel System Bleeding
   ⇒ 240.

## **Immobiliser Light**

- The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the light remains on, contact a Holden Dealer.

## **High-Beam On Light**

The Dindicator light illuminates when headlamp high beam is on.

## **Front Fog Lamp Light**

- ‡0 illuminates on the instrument panel when the lamps are in use.

# Rear Fog Light (If equipped)

O\$ illuminates amber.

It illuminates when the rear fog light is on.

## Lamps On Reminder

illuminates green.

## **Cruise Control Light**

- Silluminates on the instrument panel when the cruise control has been set.
- The light extinguishes when cruise control is turned off.

## **Trailer Indicator Light**

llluminates when the trailer is connected to your vehicle. It will go out when the trailer is disconnected.

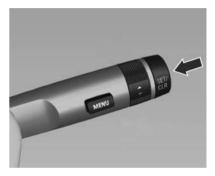
# **Information Displays**

# **Driver Information Centre (DIC)**

The Driver Information Centre is located on the instrument cluster. The Driver Information Centre displays information about your vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected.

## **Selecting Functions**

The menus and functions can be selected by the buttons on the turn signal lever.



Press the **MENU** button to switch between the menus.

The following menus can be selected:

- Vehicle Pages (Vehicle Information Menu)
- Trip Computer (Trip/Fuel Information Menu)
- ECO Menu (For vehicles equipped with diesel engine)

Use the adjusting knob to scroll through the items in each menu or to set a numeric value.

Press the **SET/CLR** button to select a function or to confirm a message.

See Trip Computer ⇒ 87.

# **Vehicle Messages**

Messages are displayed on the DIC or may be audible as a warning chime.

- Not all messages are displayed on all vehicles.
- Some settings can be changed in the personalisation menu.

See Vehicle Personalisation ⇒ 90.

#### Note

Some of the following messages require immediate action to prevent vehicle or engine damage.

## **Warning Chimes**

Warning chimes may sound.

# When Starting the Engine or while Driving

- If a seat belt is not fastened
- If a certain speed is exceeded with the parking brake applied
- If a warning message appears in the DIC
- If the parking assist detects an object

- If parking assist is activated
- If the vehicle speed exceeds the adjusted speed value

# When the Vehicle is Parked and/or a Door is Opened

- Until the engine starts, with the key in the ignition switch
- When exterior lights are on with the engine off

# Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

### **Battery Saver Active**

This message displays when the vehicle detects that the battery voltage is low. The battery saver system may disable some vehicle features for battery saving and a message is displayed. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

### **Low Battery**

This message displays when the battery voltage is low.

### **Service Battery Charging System**

This message displays when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

# **Brake System Messages**

#### **Brake Fluid Low**

- The message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low.

#### Release Parking Brake

- The message is displayed when the parking brake is on.
- Release the parking brake while driving the vehicle.

#### Hill Start Assist is Active

- The message is displayed when Hill Start Assist (HSA) is active and is preventing rollback when driving off, while on an incline.
- See Hill Start Assist (HSA)
   ⇒ 203.

# Reduce Speed for Descent Control System (DCS)

- The message is displayed when Descent Control System (DCS) is active and vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- See Descent Control System (DCS) ⇒ 205.

## **Cruise Control Messages**

#### Cruise Set to (...) Km/h

This message displays when the cruise control is set and shows the speed it was set to, see *Cruise*Control ⇒ 207

## **Door Ajar Messages**

#### **Door Open**

The message is displayed when one or more doors are open.

Close the doors completely.

### **Bonnet Open**

The message will display when the bonnet is open.

Close the bonnet completely.

#### Rear Access Open

The message will display when the tailgate is open.

Close the tailgate completely.

# Engine Cooling System Messages

#### Engine Overheated – Idle Engine

- The message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the engine to idle for a few seconds, then turn the engine off, to avoid severe damage.
- The message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

#### Caution

Engine damage may result if the engine is turned off immediately. Idle for a few seconds, then turn off

# Engine Oil Messages

## **Change Engine Oil Soon**

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. See *Engine Oil* ⇒ 233 for more information.

## **Engine Power Messages**

#### **Engine Power is Reduced**

 The message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced.

#### Note

 Although the vehicle may still be drivable, the accelerator input available may be limited, resulting in reduced power.  Have the problem repaired by a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

## **Fuel System Messages**

#### **Fuel Level Low**

The message displays when the fuel level is low and remains displayed until the fuel tank is filled above the low fuel level.

#### Water in Fuel - Contact Service

# Diesel Particulate Filter Messages

# Diesel Partic Filter is Full Continue Driving

This message will be displayed on the DIC when diesel particulate filter cleaning is required. To clean the filter, continue driving the vehicle until the warning message 

# Diesel Partic. Filter is Full Continued Driving Mandatory

If the auto self clean has been interrupted several times, this message may be displayed and a chime may sound. Do not interrupt the cleaning process. Continue driving the vehicle until the warning message extinguishes.

If the SVS (Service Vehicle Soon) message turns on, the self-cleaning process is not feasible. Contact a dealer soon.

If the diesel particulate filter is not cleaned soon, the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) will illuminate and the 'Engine Power is Reduced' message will be displayed. Vehicle performance will be limited.

See Diesel Particulate Filter \$ 194, Engine Power Messages \$ 83 and Malfunction Indicator Lamp \$ 75.

# **Key and Lock Messages**

## Replace Battery in Remote Key

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced.

# **Lamp Messages**

## **Check Brake Lamps**

This message displays if a brake bulb needs to be replaced.

# **Object Detection System Messages**

#### Park Assist Off

This message displays when the Parking Assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled.

## **Service Parking Assist**

This message displays if there is a problem with the Parking Assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See your dealer for service.

# Ride Control System Messages

#### **Service ESC**

This message displays if there is a problem with the Electronic Stability Control and/or Traction Control system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

#### **ESC OFF**

This message displays when the Electronic Stability Control system has been switched off manually by pressing & on the instrument panel.

#### **Traction Control ON**

This message displays when the Traction Control (TC) system has been switched on manually by pressing & on the instrument panel.

#### **Traction Control OFF**

This message displays when the Traction Control (TC) system has been switched off manually by pressing \$\frac{1}{48}\$ on the instrument panel.

## **Airbag System Messages**

#### Service Airbag

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

# Anti-theft Alarm System Messages

### Theft Attempted

This message displays if a theft has been attempted.

While the ignition is on, press **MENU** to clear the message. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇒ 90 and *Anti-theft Alarm System* ⇒ 24.

## Service Theft Deterrent System

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle security system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

## **Service Vehicle Messages**

#### Service Vehicle Soon

This message will be displayed on the DIC if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take your vehicle to a dealer for service.

# Steering System Messages

# Steering Assist Is Reduced Drive With Care

This message may display if a problem occurs with the electric power steering system. If this message appears, steering effort may be slightly higher than normal. The vehicle is still safe to drive. Use caution while in reduced assist mode. If this message is persistent or appears repeatedly, take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See *Steering* ♦ 189.

### Service Power Steering

## Tyre Messages

#### **Service Tire Monitor System**

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays if a part on the system is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light* ⋄ 78. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* ⋄ 256. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer.

### Tire Learning Active

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the system is relearning the tire positions on your vehicle. The tyre positions must be relearned after rotating the tyres or after replacing a sensor. See , *Tyre Rotation* \$\dip 258\$, *Tyre Pressure Monitor System* \$\dip 254\$, and *Tyre Pressure* \$\dip 253\$.

#### Tire Pressure Low Add Air To Tire

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tires is low. This message also displays with a vehicle picture to indicate the location of the low tire. The low tyre pressure warning light will also come on. See Tire Pressure Monitorina System Light ⇒ 78. You can receive more than one tyre pressure message at a time. If a tyre pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tire pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tire and Loading Information label.

See *Tyre Pressure* ⇒ 253 and *Vehicle Weight* ⇒ 278. The DIC also shows the tyre pressure values. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇒ 80.

## **Transmission Messages**

#### **Service Transmission**

This message displays if there is a problem with the transmission. Contact a Holden Dealer.

#### **Shift Denied**

This message displays when the transmission has not shifted to the selected gear as the current vehicle speed will result in an engine speed outside the suitable range. See Manual Mode ▷ 197.

## **Grade Braking Active**

This message displays when the grade braking feature has been activated while driving on downhill gradients.

#### Transmission Hot – Idle Engine

This message displays when immediate action by the driver is necessary to prevent transmission failure.

Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the engine to idle for a few seconds, then turn the engine off.

#### Service 4WD

This message displays when there is a problem with the four-wheel drive system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

### 4WD Shift in Progress

This message displays while the four-wheel drive system is shifting.

#### For 4WD Low Shift to Neutral

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift into Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested and the vehicle speed is correct, but the transmission is not in N (Neutral).

#### To Exit 4WD Low Shift To Neutral

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested and the vehicle speed is correct, but the transmission is not in N (Neutral).

#### For 4WD Low Slow to 5 km/h

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift into Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested but the vehicle speed is too high.

#### To Exit 4WD Low Slow to 5 km/h

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested but the vehicle speed is too high.

#### Vehicle In 4WD Low

This message displays if the vehicle is driven in Four-Wheel Drive Low for about 10 minutes above 72 km/h.

#### **4WD OFF**

This message displays when the four-wheel drive system is temporarily disabled due to

overheating. The vehicle will run in two-wheel drive when this message is present. Once the four-wheel drive system cools down, the message turns off and the four-wheel drive system returns to normal operation.

## Vehicle Reminder Messages

#### Ice Possible. Drive with Care

This message displays when icy conditions are possible.

### **Parking Assist Off**

This message displays when the Parking Assist (PA) system has been turned off due to a fault. See Parking Assist ⇒ 211.

### **Service Parking Assist**

This message displays if there is a problem with the PA system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

## **Vehicle Speed Messages**

### Selected Speed Limit Exceeded

This message displays when the vehicle speed is greater than the adjusted set speed.

# **Trip Computer**

The trip computer is located in the Driver Information Centre.

The trip computer is divided into 3 sections:

- Trip Pages
- Vehicle Pages
- Eco Pages

## **Trip Pages**

To operate the trip computer, press the **MENU** button in the turn signal lever.

Turn the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Digital Speedometer.
- Combined Trip 1 and Trip 2.
- Fuel Range.
- Instantaneous fuel economy.
- Timer.
- Outside Air Temperature.

Some modes can be reset by pressing the **SET/CLR** button.

#### **Digital Speedometer**

This mode indicates the vehicle speed.

### Combined Trip 1 and Trip 2

This mode indicates the current distance travelled, average vehicle fuel consumption and average vehicle speed since the last reset.

To reset, press and hold the **SET/ CLR** button.

### **Fuel Range**

The Fuel Range display shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling.

The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

When the fuel range estimate is less than 64 km, **Fuel Level Low** message will appear on the Driver Information Center and the low fuel control indicator will start to flash.

See Low Fuel Warning Light 

79 and Driver Information Centre (DIC)

80.

The distance can be different depending on driving patterns.

#### Note

As an auxiliary device, the trip computer may differ from the actual distance for remaining fuel according to circumstances.

The driving distance for remaining fuel can be changed by the driver, the road, and the vehicle speed because it is calculated according to the changing fuel efficiency.

### Instantaneous Fuel Economy

This mode indicates the instantaneous fuel economy of the vehicle to the user reflecting the effect of acceleration on fuel consumption

#### **Timer**

The timer function measures the time that has passed since the last reset, using the elapsed time.

To reset the driving time to zero, press and hold the **SET/CLR** button for more than 1 second.

#### **Outside Air Temperature**

This mode indicates the outside temperature in Celsius (°C) degrees.

### **Vehicle Pages**

Depending on vehicle equipment, some of the functions described below might not be available.

Press the **MENU** button on the turn signal lever until Vehicle Pages menu is displayed.

Use the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Battery Voltage.
- Coolant Temperature.
- Engine and Idle Hours.
- Tire Load (if available)
- Transmission Fluid Temperature.
- Speed Warning.
- Remaining Oil Life (if available).
- Tire Pressure (if available).

To change between menus, press the **MFNU** button

#### **Battery Voltage**

This display shows the current battery voltage.

### **Coolant Temperature**

This display shows the current coolant temperature.

### **Engine and Idle Hours**

The hourmeter is used to display the number of hours that the engine has been running.

#### Tire Load (if available)

This display shows the current tire load.

The tire loads that can be selected are the following:

Light: Light loaded vehicle.

ECO: Best Economy.

Max: Heavy loaded vehicle.

### **Transmission Fluid Temperature**

This display shows the current transmission fluid temperature.

#### **Speed Warning**

This mode allows you to set the warning signal for the desired speed.

To set the speed warning, press the **SET/CLR** button and use the thumbwheel to select the desired speed.

## Remaining Oil Life (if available)

This display shows the current percentage of oil life.

### Tire Pressure (if available)

This display shows the current tire pressure.

## **Eco Pages**

Press the **MENU** button on the turn signal lever until ECO menu is displayed.

Turn the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Eco Index.
- Economy Trend.
- Fuel Economy.

#### Eco Index

This feature provides feedback to the driver with a relative value of how fuel efficient they are driving. The percentage is determined based on current fuel consumption compared to what is expected by the calibration settings.

A leaf is shown at ECO Index Page when driving economically, for that the indicator must be in the ECO area.

## **Economy Trend**

This page displays the average fuel consumption of the last 50 km. Each column presents the average fuel consumption of the last 5 km.

### **Fuel Economy**

The current instantaneous fuel economy with the average and best obtained indicated by two labeled arrows. The indicator slides left and right within the bar depending the current instantaneous fuel economy. The selectable ranges are 25 km, 100 km, and 500 km.

# Vehicle Personalisation

The settings can be personalised in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and in the Vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system.

For settings available in the Infotainment System, see *Settings* 

⇒ 141 and Radio Settings under 
Operation ⇒ 156.

#### Note

Depending on the vehicle variant, some of the following functions may not be available.

### Settings in the DIC



- Press MENU until Vehicle Information Menu is displayed.
- Rotate the adjuster wheel to scroll through the following menu items:

Speed warning

Remaining oil life

Battery voltage

To close or to return to the previous page, press MENU.

### **Speed Warning**

The speed warning allows a warning signal to be set, at a chosen speed.

To set the speed warning:

- 1. Press SET/CLR.
- 2. Rotate the adjuster wheel to select **On**.
- 3. Press SET/CLR.
- 4. Rotate the adjuster wheel to select a speed.
- 5. Press SET/CLR to confirm.

## **Remaining Oil Life**

- Displays the estimate of the oil's remaining useful life.
- If Remaining Oil Life 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains
- When the remaining oil life is low, the Change Engine Oil Soon message will appear on the display. The oil should be changed as soon as possible.

  The oil life display must be reset after each oil change. Be careful not to reset the oil life display at any other time. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

How to reset the Remaining Oil Life:

- 1. Turn the ignition on with the engine not running.
- Press the MENU button on the turn signal lever and rotate the adjuster wheel to select the Remaining Oil Life display.
- Press and hold the SET/CLR button on the end of the turn signal lever to reset the oil life to 100%.
- 4. Turn the ignition off.

### **Battery Voltage**

Displays the current battery voltage.

# Lighting

Exterior Lighting	
Exterior Lamp Controls	92
Automatic Light Control	93
Headlamp High/Low-Beam	
Changer	93
Flash-to-Pass	93
Headlight Range	
Adjustment	94
Daytime Running	
Lamps (DRL)	94
Hazard Warning Flashers	94
Turn and Lane-Change	
Signals	
Front Fog Lamps	
Reverse Lamps	95
Misted Light Covers	95
Interior Lighting	
Instrument Panel Illumination	
Control	96
Load Compartment Lamps	
Courtesy Lamps	
Reading Lamps	
Sun Visor Lamps	
Juli visoi Lailips	IJΙ

Lighting Features	
Entry Lighting	98
Exit Lighting	98
Battery Power Protection	98

# **Exterior Lighting**

## **Exterior Lamp Controls**

Light Switch with Automatic Light Control



### Turn light switch:

じ: With automatic light system, turn the switch to activate or deactivate the system, switch turns back to **AUTO** 

**AUTO:** Headlights and exterior lights are switched on and off automatically depending on external lighting conditions

₹00€: Sidelights, number plate lights and instrument panel lamps are illuminated

D: Headlights

When lights are on, the control indicator 305 lights up.

## **Automatic Light Control**



When the automatic light function **AUTO** is switched on, the system switches on the headlights and taillights automatically, depending on the exterior illumination conditions.

This function operates with a short delay in dependence of lighting conditions.

If the windscreen wipers continue to operate 8 cycles when it is dark enough outside, the exterior lamps will illuminate automatically.

# Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer



To switch from low to high beam, push the lever.

To switch to low beam, pull the lever.

# **⚠** Warning

Always switch the high beam headlights to low beam when you approach oncoming vehicles or other vehicles ahead. High beam headlights can temporarily dazzle other drivers, which could result in a collision.

### Flash-to-Pass

To flash the high beam lights, pull the lever rearwards and release.

The lights stay on for as long as the lever is held.

# Headlight Range Adjustment



To set the headlight range according to vehicle load, turn the knob to the required position.

**0 or 1 :** One person in the driver's seat.

**0 or 1 :** Front seats occupied (2 passengers).

2: Front seats and all seats farthest to the rear occupied (5 passengers).

**2**: All the seats occupied (7 passengers).

- **3**: All the seats occupied plus load compartment full with the permissible load on the rear axle.
- **3**: One person in the driver's seat, plus load compartment full with the permissible load on the rear axle.

# Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL increase the visibility of the vehicle during daylight. The DRL LEDs can operate in two different intensities:

- Normal intensity for position light
- High intensity for DRL function

The DRL operate in high intensity in the following conditions:

- The ignition is in the ON/ RUN mode.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO (if available) or OFF (vehicles without AUTO light)
- The engine is running and the selector lever is not in P.

## **Hazard Warning Flashers**



Operated with the  $\triangle$  button.

Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers will activate automatically if the airbags deploy.

# Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Push the lever in the direction the steering wheel is turned.

To signal a lane change, push the lever part way in the direction of the turn. The turn signals will flash three times (six times when a trailer is connected).

To cancel a lane change function, push the lever in either direction.

A green arrow on the instrument panel flashes when the lamps are in operation.

## **Front Fog Lamps**

The vehicle may have front fog lamps.



The front fog lamps provide extra illumination to the sides of the road and improve visibility in fog or snow.

To switch the front fog lamps on:

- Rotate the lamp control to 305 or 3.
- 2. Press \$0.

‡D illuminates on the instrument panel.

## **Reverse Lamps**

The reverse lamps illuminate when the ignition is on and reverse gear is engaged.

## **Misted Light Covers**

### Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

# Interior Lighting

# Instrument Panel Illumination Control



To adjust the instrument lighting brightness:

- 1. Rotate  $\mathcal{E}_{3}^{\mathfrak{H}}$ .
- 2. Hold until the required brightness is reached.

# Load Compartment Lamps



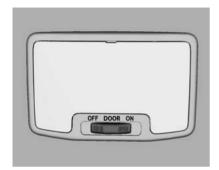
The lamps illuminate when a door or the tailgate is opened.

# **Courtesy Lamps**



Press 4.

The light automatically switches on when a door is opened and turns off after doors are closed.



Slide the switch:

**OFF**: Remains off when doors are opened or closed.

**DOOR**: Automatically switches on when a door is opened and turns off after doors are closed.

**ON**: Remains on when doors are opened or closed.

#### Note

To prevent the battery from discharging, turn the lamp off when the engine is not running.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not leave the courtesy lamp on while driving in the dark.

## **Reading Lamps**



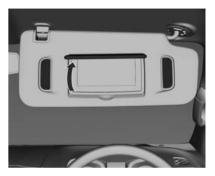
The reading lamps are located between the sun visors.

1. Press the light area to turn a lamp on.

The passenger's or driver's front lamp illuminates.

Press again to turn the lamp off.

## **Sun Visor Lamps**



Illuminates when the vanity mirror cover is opened, see *Sun Visors* ⇒ 30.

# **Lighting Features**

# **Entry Lighting**

Entry lighting provides additional security when returning to the vehicle at night.

Press on the key. Interior and exterior\* lights illuminate for a short time.

\*: with light control switch in Auto.

The lighting switches off when the ignition is turned to the ACC position.

Additionally, some interior lights and switches will illuminate when the driver's door is opened.

## **Exit Lighting**

The interior lamps will come on when the key is removed from the ignition. The lamps will not come on if the sliding button of the courtesy light is in the **OFF** position.

Headlights illuminate the way for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle. The exit lighting in the standard setting is activated 30 seconds after the driver's door is closed.

The activation time can be changed, refer to Settings in the Infotainment System.

### To operate:

- 1. Switch off ignition.
- Turn the light control switch to Auto.
- Remove ignition key.
- Open driver's door.
- 5. Close driver's door.

# Battery Power Protection Switching Off Electric Lights

To prevent discharge of the battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

If you turn off the ignition with the exterior lights on, they will immediately turn off. If you turn the exterior lights on when the ignition is off they will remain on.

# Infotainment System

Introduction Introduction 100 Overview 100 Steering Wheel Controls 103 Using the System 103
RadioAM-FM Radio105Radio Reception106Radio Reception106Fixed Mast Antenna108
Audio PlayersUSB Port
NavigationUsing the NavigationSystem112Maps117Navigation Symbols117Destination118Settings123Global PositioningSection (CRS)124
System (GPS) 124

Vehicle Positioning 12 Problems with Route	5
Guidance	5
Service	26
Voice Recognition Voice Recognition (If equipped)	
Phone Bluetooth (Overview)	
Controls)	
Recognition)	9
Android Auto 14	C
Settings	1
Trademarks and License Agreements Trademarks and Licence Agreements	.4
3	

Introduction Infotainment	154 154 155 155
Radio AM-FM Radio	158 158
Audio Players USB Port Auxiliary Devices	
Phone Bluetooth (Overview) Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) Hands-Free Phone Hands-Free Phone (Apple CarPlay and Android Auto)	168 173
Settings	175

# Trademarks and License Agreements

## Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available.

This section describes the infotainment system with built-in Navigation system. For the system without built-in Navigation, see *Infotainment* ⋄ 153.

#### Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

#### Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment

tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

# **⚠** Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the steering wheel controls.

#### Before driving:

 Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.

- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

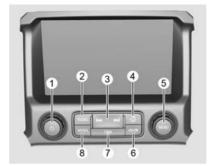
See "Defensive Driving" in the owner manual.

#### **Customer Care**

Assistance is available to help with Bluetooth pairing, application downloading and installation, other mobile device interface, and operation support of the infotainment system. Contact your dealer for assistance.

### Infotainment System

The infotainment system is controlled by using the touchscreen, the buttons below the touchscreen, steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.



## 1. じ (Power/Volume)

- Press to turn the audio on.
- Press and hold to turn it off.
- Press to mute the system.
   Press again to unmute.
- Turn to increase or decrease the volume.

#### 2. RADIO

 Press to change the audio source between AM and FM.

### I (Seek)

- 4. 4 (Home Page)
  - Press to go to the Home Page from any point in the system. See "Home Page".

#### 5. MENU

- Press to access the menu for the current audio source.
- Press to select the highlighted menu option.
- Turn to scroll through a list.
- Turn to manually select a station.

### 6. BACK

 Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.

## 7. TONE

 Press TONE in the AUDIO screen to open the Tone Settings menu.

#### 8 MFDIA

 Press to change the audio source between USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio, if equipped and if connected to the system.

#### Power (On/Off/Mute)

- Press U to turn the system on.
   Press again and hold to turn it off.
- Press U to mute the system.
   Press again to unmute the system.

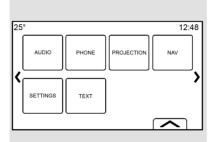
#### Volume

Turn  $\circlearrowleft$  to increase or decrease the volume.

#### Note

When changing the audio source, a difference in volume may be experienced.

## **Home Page**



The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

The Home Page can be set up to have up to five pages with eight icons per page.

- 《 (Previous): Touch to go to the previous Home Page.
- Next): Touch to go to the next Home Page.
- (Interaction Selector): Touch to display the favorites list.

Touch and hold a location within the favorites area to begin the process of saving a favorite application.

Touch the application icon to store as a favorite. The name of the application will be shown in favorites.

### **Managing Home Page Icons**

- Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
- 2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
- 3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
- To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the screen towards the desired page.
- Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
- 6. Press 1 to exit edit mode.

## **Steering Wheel Controls**



#### Volume button

- Move the button upward to VOL + button to increase the volume.
- Move the button downward to - button to decrease the volume.

## 2. Button

 Press this button to decline an incoming call or end a current call.  Press this button to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

#### 3. 🌾 button

- When there is no connected Bluetooth device, the Infotainment system executes the Bluetooth device connection.
- When there is a connected Bluetooth device, press the button to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold the button to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.

 If an iPhone is connected, press and hold to enter the Siri function.

## 4. ∆ /∇ (seek)

• When  $\triangle / \nabla$  are pressed up/down.

In Radio modes, changes broadcast frequencies saved.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, changes the file.

 When ∆ /∇ are pressed and held.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, rewind or fast forward the file.

# Using the System

#### **Touchscreen Buttons**

Touchscreen buttons show on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may gray out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

### **Home Page Features**

Touch the icons on the Home Page screen to launch an application.

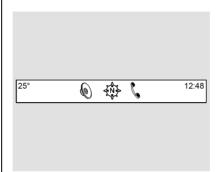
#### **Audio**

Touch the AUDIO icon to display the active audio source page. Available sources are AM, FM, DAB, My Media, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

#### **Phone**

## Settings

## **Applications Tray**



The applications tray is at the top-center of the screen. The applications tray can have three to five applications.

To add an application from the Home Page to the applications tray:

- Touch and hold any icon on the Home Page to enter edit mode.
- Drag the icon to the applications tray.

To remove an item from the applications tray, drag the icon from the applications tray back to the Home Page.

Press to exit edit mode.

Adding or removing applications from the applications tray will not remove them from the Home Page.

# Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

## Radio

#### AM-FM Radio

### Playing the Radio

While on the Audio main page, the available sources are: AM, FM, DAB, My Media, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

- Touch the Audio screen button on the Home Page or Radio button below the touchscreen to scroll through AM, FM or DAB.
- Touch the Media screen button on the Home Page or Media button below the touchscreen to scroll through My Media USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

## **Infotainment System Settings**

Touch the Audio screen button to access broadcast sources.

Touch the MENU screen button to display the following menus:

#### **Tone Settings:**

Bass, Midrange, Treble : Touch
 + or - to adjust.

- Balance: Touch 

  or 

  for
  more sound from the left or right
  speakers. The middle position
  balances the sound between the
  left and right speakers.
- Fade: Touch ∧ or ∨ for more sound from the front or rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.

## Finding a Station

#### Seeking a Station

Press ★ or ★ on the faceplate to search for the previous or next station with good reception.

#### **Direct Tune**

Touch the TUNE screen button to switch to Direct Tune for manually searching for a station.

If not equipped with Direct Tune, touch the SEEK screen button to switch to TUNE. Touch again to change back. Turn the MENU knob to manually search for a station.

Press 

BACK on the faceplate to return to the Home Page or touch 

to return for the previous page.

### **Storing Radio Station Presets**

Favorites are stored in the area at the bottom of the screen.

Up to 60 preset stations can be stored under the following:

AM or FM, Radio Stations: Touch and hold a favorite screen button to save the current station as a favorite. Touch a favorite screen button in the favorite area to recall a favorite station.

#### **Mixed-Audio Favorites**

Favorites that can be stored include radio stations, media favorites, contacts, destinations, navigation, or applications.

To scroll through the favorites:

Drag up on the top border of the favorites bar to view the favorites. To close the favorites, drag them down.

 Slide a finger to the right or left to scroll through each page of favorites.

Tone Settings: Touch and hold a favorite screen button in the favorite area to save the current tone settings as a favorite in the tone settings screen. Drag up on the reveal button at the bottom to bring up favorites. Touch a favorite screen button in the favorite area to recall a favorite tone setting.

The number of favorites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in the Settings menu under Radio and then Number of Favourites Shown.

## **Radio Reception**

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

#### FΜ

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur,

especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

#### AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

## **Cell Phone Usage**

Cell phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

## Radio Reception

## Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) is an innovative and universal broadcasting system.

#### Note

Not all of the following features may be supported.

#### Advantages of DAB

- DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency
- With DAB, several radio programmes (services) can be broadcasted on a single frequency (ensemble).
- Besides high-quality digital audio services, DAB is also able to transmit programme-associated data and a multitude of other data services.
- As long as a given DAB receiver can pick up the signal sent out by a broadcasting station (even if the signal is very weak), sound reproduction is ensured.
- There is no fading (weakening of the sound that is typical of AM or FM reception). The DAB signal is reproduced at a constant volume.

If the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver, reception is interrupted completely. This can be avoided by activating DAB to DAB Linking and/or DAB to FM Linking in the DAB menu (see below).

- Interference caused by stations that are on nearby frequencies (a phenomenon that is typical of AM and FM reception) does not occur with DAB.
- If the DAB signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings, the reception quality of DAB is improved, whereas AM or FM reception is considerably impaired in such cases.
- When DAB reception is enabled, the FM tuner of the Infotainment system remains active in the background and continually searches for the best receivable FM stations.

## **DAB** settings

To configure the DAB settings options, activate the radio function and then select the DAB waveband. Select MENU in the interaction selector bar to display the DAB menu.

## **DAB** announcements

Besides their music programmes, a lot of DAB stations also broadcast announcements of various categories. If you activate some or all categories, the DAB service currently received is interrupted when an announcement of these categories is made.

Select DAB Announcements to display the DAB categories list. Select the desired categories. The categories selected are marked with 9.

### Note

DAB announcements can only be received if the DAB waveband is activated.

### DAB to DAB Linking

If this function is activated, the device switches over to the same service (programme) on another DAB ensemble (frequency, if available) when the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver

Set DAB to DAB Linking - On or DAB to DAB Linking - Off.

## **DAB to FM Linking**

If this function is activated, the device switches over to a corresponding FM station of the active DAB service (if available) when the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver.

Set DAB to FM Linking - On or DAB to FM Linking - Off.

#### L Band

If L Band is activated, the Infotainment system receives an additional frequency range. The frequencies for L-band comprise earth and satellite radio (1452 – 1492 MHz).

Set L Band - On or L Band - Off.

### Note

Additional L-Band frequencies may not be used

## Intellitext

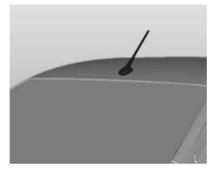
The Intellitext function allows for the reception of additional information such as announcements, financial information, sports, news etc.

Select one of the categories and choose a specific item to display detailed information.

## Note

Some countries may not support this feature

## **Fixed Mast Antenna**



To remove the roof antenna, rotate it anticlockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

## Caution

To avoid damaging the antenna or the roof panel, be sure to remove the antenna before entering the automatic car wash or a place with a low ceiling.

Install the antenna firmly.

Whenever using the roof rack system, check if the antenna is not obstructing the area that is being used by the roof rack system or the cargo.

## **Audio Players**

## **USB Port**

The vehicle may have a USB port on the main storage under the armrest.

## Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

## Gracenote® (If equipped)

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition.

While indexing, infotainment features are available.

## My Media Library

Allows access to content from all indexed media sources. Touch the MEDIA screen button to scroll through the options until My Media is selected. Use the screen buttons to scroll through the content.

## **USB MP3 Player and USB Drives**

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disk drives are not supported.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
  - Maximum folder structure level: 11 levels.
  - Applicable audio extensions are mp3, wma, aac, m4a, and aif.
  - WMA and Apple lossless files are not supported.
  - Supported file systems are FAT32 and NTFS.

To play a USB device, do one of the following:

- Connect the USB.
- Press MEDIA until the connected device is shown.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

► (Play) : Press to play the current media source.

**II** (Pause): Press to pause play of the current media source.

## **◄** (Previous/Reverse):

- Press to return to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than two seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than 2–5 seconds, depending on the device, the current track restarts.
- Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback.
   Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

## **▶** (Next/Forward):

- Press to proceed to the next track.
- Press and hold to advance quickly through playback.
   Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

#### **USB Menu**

Touch Menu to display the USB menu. The following may be available:

**Shuffle:** Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

**Tone:** Touch + or − to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇒ 105.

## **USB Browse Menu**

Touch anywhere between the top and bottom menus or touch the BROWSE button to view the BROWSE menu. The following options are displayed along the bottom of the screen:

## Playlists:

- 1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
- Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
- 3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

#### Artists:

- Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
- 2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
- To select a song, touch 
   be to play All Songs or touch the artist name and then select a song from the list.

#### Albums:

- Touch to view the albums on the USB.
- 2. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
- 3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

## Songs:

- 1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
- 2. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

#### Genres:

 Touch to view the genres on the USB.

- 2. Select a genre to view a list of all content of that genre.
- Select artist to view a list of albums. Select an album to view a list of songs.
- 4. Select a song to start playback.

Podcasts, Composers, Audiobooks, Videos, and Folder View are shown when More is selected from the bottom of the screen.

#### Podcasts:

- Touch to view the podcasts on the USB.
- Select a podcast.
- 3. Select an episode to start playback.

## Composers:

- Touch to view the composers on the USB.
- 2. Select Composers to view a list of albums by that composer.
- 3. Select an album to view a list of songs.
- 4. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

#### Audiobooks:

- Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the device.
- Select the audiobook from the list. Select a chapter to begin playback.

## Folder View (If Equipped):

- 1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
- Select a folder to view a list of all files.
- 3. Select a file from the list to begin playback.

## **File System and Naming**

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

#### Loss of Audio

If a phone currently paired over Bluetooth is plugged in with a USB cable, the system will automatically mute the Bluetooth audio. Playback can be resumed by changing the audio source from Bluetooth to USB cable.

Source USB from the Audio MEDIA screen button to resume playback.

# Auxiliary Jack (If equipped)

An auxiliary input jack is provided in the center console under the armrest. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- Audio music player

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Set up an auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system can play audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, touch the MEDIA screen button to scroll through audio source screens, until AUX Input source screen displays.

## Playing from the AUX Port

An auxiliary device is played through the audio system and controlled through the device itself.

## **AUX Menu**

Touch the MEDIA screen button to display the AUX Input menu and then the following options may display:

## **Bluetooth Audio**

If equipped, music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) 

⇒ 138 or Bluetooth (Overview) 

⇒ 133 or Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) 

⇒ 134 for help pairing a device.

The music can be controlled by either the infotainment controls or the controls on the device.

Music can be launched by pressing the MEDIA faceplate button or touching the MEDIA screen button on the AUDIO Home Page.

To play music via Bluetooth:

- 1. Power on the device, and pair to connect the device.
- Once paired, go into the audio application from the Home Page or through the applications tray. Select MEDIA until Bluetooth displays.

## **Bluetooth Audio Menu**

Touch the MENU screen button to display the Bluetooth Audio menu. The following may be available:

**Tone:** Touch + or − to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio*  $\Rightarrow$  105.

Touch **(** to go back to the previous menu.

Manage Bluetooth Devices: Touch to go to the Bluetooth page to add or delete devices.

When using the Bluetooth audio source, the radio may not be able to launch specific applications on your device. Use the device to start audio playback when it is safe to do so.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth audio as a source, the radio may show as paused on the screen. Press play on the device or press ▶ to begin playback.

## **Navigation**

# Using the Navigation System

Touch the NAV button on the Home Page or the Nav icon in the applications tray to access the navigation application.

Touch MENU from the map view or MENU button on the faceplate to access the Navigation Menu. Features displayed in the Navigation Menu can be selected to adjust navigation preferences.

The buttons on the infotainment screen display will time out when not interacting. Tap anywhere on the screen to reveal the controls, then select the desired control.

Additional navigation features are:

- Cancel/Resume Route
- Navigation Voice Preferences
- Current Location

- Map View
- · Routing Preferences
- Display "Places of Interest" Icons
- Personal Data

#### Cancel/Resume Route

- While under route guidance, this screen button displays Cancel Route. Touch Cancel Route to cancel route guidance. No further prompts will be given. The list item then changes to Resume To.
- Touch the Resume To screen button to resume route guidance to the last entered destination.
   The last location that the system has provided guidance to can be resumed by touching on this list item.
- If the route includes waypoints, the entire route can be suspended using the Cancel Guidance list item. When Resume Guidance is touched, all waypoints are resumed for guidance.

## **Navigation Voice Preferences**

Touch the Navigation Voice Preferences list item to adjust the voice preferences.

The following options can be adjusted:

- Voice Prompts ON-OFF
- Voice Volume
- Prompts During Phone Calls ON-OFF

## **Voice Prompts**

Touch the Voice Prompts list item to toggle voice prompts ON and OFF.

### **Voice Volume**

Adjust the loudness of the audio feedback by touching the – or + button. If a maneuver prompt is being played, and the main volume is adjusted, the prompt volume will update and be saved.

## **Prompts During Phone Calls**

When enabled, the system plays a shorter prompt while on a phone call. This setting can be configured as to whether a prompt would be heard during a phone conversation.

When this setting is OFF, only the short alert tone is played when approaching the maneuver.

#### **Current Location**

Touch the Current Location list item to display a Current Location list.

The following information is displayed on the Current Location list:

- Nearest Address
- Lat/Long
- Nearest Hospital
- Nearest Police
- Nearest Fuel
- Nearest Service

Touch on any of the options to display the destination details view for the selected location to begin guidance.

Touch the Nearest Address button and then the Save screen button to store the current location to the Address Book.

## **Display Places of Interest Icons**

Places of Interest (POI) icons can be displayed on the map using this view.

- The POI icons can be turned ON and OFF. Touch the check box next to the POI icon to display the icon.
- Touch Clear All to reset the icons that are displayed on the map.
- A subcategory can be selected instead of the entire category.
   Touch the list item rather than the check box. The subcategories will display. Select any of those categories to navigate down the hierarchy.
- When a higher-level category
  has some of its subcategories
  selected, the checkmark next to
  it is grayed out. This indicates
  that only some of the categories
  below are shown. Touch the
  grayed-out checkmark to turn all
  of the icons for that category on
  or off.

## **Map View**

Touch to select the desired map view. A checkmark appears to indicate a view has been selected.

### 3D View

The 3D View is a Heading Up view but it includes perspective. Map items will appear larger as the vehicle comes closer.

## **Heading Up View**

The Heading Up View keeps the vehicle's current heading at the top of the view. The vehicle icon always faces the top of the view as the map rotates.

## **North Up View**

The North Up View keeps north at the top of the view. The vehicle icon is placed in the center of the view and rotates to indicate the heading for the vehicle.

## **Audio Information On/Off**

Touch to turn the audio information view on or off from the main map view.

The audio status screen contains the following elements:

- Station Frequency
- Artist Information
- Song Information
- ► / II or I → Station and Channel Controls

Touch the **!** ✓ ✓ **!> Station controls** to go to the next or previous strong signal station or digital channel.

When the audio status pane displays Artist and Song Information, touch the ◄ / ► controls to go to the next or previous track based on the current media mode.

## Day/Night Mode

Touch to access the Day/Night Mode menu.

The options are:

- Day Mode: Brightens the map background.
- Night Mode: Darkens the map background.

 Automatic: Adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.

## **Routing Preferences**

Touch the Routing Preferences list item to access the Routing Preferences menu. Options on how the routes are created for route quidance are listed on this menu.

## **Route Style**

Touch this list item to change the route type preferences.

The options are:

- Fast (default)
- Eco Friendly (if equipped)
- Short
- Edit Eco Profile

The Edit Eco Profile can be used to configure two parameters for the Eco Friendly route. These parameters are roof load and trailer. For each parameter, the options are None, Small, Medium, and Large. Press to scroll through the list. The default for both is None.

These preferences are used for all routes generated.

Route segment preferences are other options showing on the Routing Preferences menu.

### This includes:

- Use Toll Roads ON-OFF
- Use Freeways ON-OFF
- Use Carpool Lanes ON-OFF
- Use Ferries ON-OFF
- Use Tunnels ON-OFF
- Use Time Restricted Roads ON-OFF

#### **Personal Data**

Data that the system has saved during the course of using the navigation system can be managed through:

- Contacts
- Recent Destinations
- My POIs (if equipped)
- Upload Saved Locations
- Delete Autocomplete

#### Contacts

- Touch Edit Contacts to display the Contacts to edit.
- Touch Delete All Entries to delete the entire list of contacts or touch Edit Contacts List to delete one or more itens.
   A pop-up displays to confirm.

## **Recent Destinations**

- Touch Delete Individual Destinations to display a recent destinations list. Select the individual entry to delete.
- Touch Delete All Destinations to delete the entire recent destination list. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

## My POIs

- Touch My POIs to display a menu of other options.
- Select Delete Individual Categories. A My POIs category list displays.
- Select the individual entry to delete.

- Touch Delete All My POIs to delete the entire list of categories. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.
- To exit out of a list, touch the Exit screen button in the top right corner of the map to return to the main map view.

**Upload Saved Locations**: Touch to upload any saved locations such as downloaded POIs and all entries in the vehicle address book to the USB device.

- Touch Upload Saved Locations to save the Vehicle Contacts list and any My POIs that have been saved to the vehicle.
- Once saved locations have been uploaded to a USB, they can be transferred to a different vehicle or restored to the current address book.

## **Delete Autocomplete**

 Touch Delete Autocomplete to delete all keyboard autocomplete history. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

## **Map Adjustments**

ZOOM -/+ can be used to adjust the scale of view on the map. When the end of the zoom level is reached, ZOOM -/+ will gray out.

The zoom scales can be configured for English or metric units. To change from English to metric, see "Instrument Cluster" in the owner manual.

## **Scroll Features**

- To scroll within the map, touch anywhere on the map screen.
- Nudge or slide a finger on the map; the map moves in the direction of the finger.
- Fling a finger on the map; the map will start scrolling in a short continuous scroll.
- Touch a finger on the location on the map; the map recenters to the location that was touched on.

- Touch a finger twice on a location on the map; the map zooms in one level to the location that was touched twice on.
- When the map is recentered away from being locked to the vehicle position, the crosshairs will show in the center of the map. As the map continues to be recentered, the crosshairs will remain on the screen. When the crosshairs are shown on the screen, a callout with more information displays. If the map is moved from the current location, the crosshairs will disappear along with the callout.
- Touch a finger on the callout next to the crosshairs and the destination details view displays.
   From this view, route guidance can be received or saved to the vehicle's contact list.
- When the map is recentered, the straight-line distance from the vehicle to the selected point is displayed in the callout. In addition, a heading direction in

the form of an arrow is displayed to indicate the direction. The arrow is shown in relation to the current vehicle heading.

- Touch a finger on a POI icon shown on the map; the name of the POI is shown in the address callout, along with the city name and state. If the callout is selected, the destination details view for the POI is shown.
- After panning the map away from the vehicle, touch RESET to return the map back to the current position.
- Touch the Overview button to quickly get a view of the entire route. The route Overview button takes the place of the RESET button while under route guidance. Touch the RESET button to return the map to the current position.

## Maps

The map database is stored in the internal flash memory that is used in the navigation system.

### **Detailed Areas**

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names. street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads. and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports. banks, hospitals, police stations. gas stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

## **Navigation Symbols**

Following are the most common symbols that appear on a map screen.



or



The vehicle symbol indicates the current position and heading direction of the vehicle on the map. When under route guidance, a circle with an arrow is added to the vehicle symbol which indicates the direction to the destination.

## **Vehicle Address Callout**

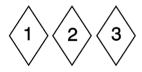
Tap on the vehicle icon, to have the current address of the vehicle overlaid on the map next to the vehicle icon in a callout. Another tap hides the information.

Any address information about the vehicle's current location will be shown, including the street, city, and state names.

Tap on this callout to save the current address to the vehicle address book.



The destination symbol marks the final destination after a route has been planned.



The waypoint symbol marks one or more set waypoints.

A waypoint is a stopover destination point added to the planned route.



The estimated time to the destination displays. Touch the Arrival button to toggle to duration and to the distance of the destination.



This symbol indicates the recommended maneuver that should be performed. Touch it to display the turn list or waypoint list.



The No GPS symbol appears when there is no Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal. When the GPS is gone, the vehicle position on the map may not be accurate.

#### Autozoom

As a maneuver is being approached, the map automatically zooms in to give greater detail.

If lane guidance is available for the maneuver, this is also shown.

When the system begins to autozoom, it zooms in to its minimum level. After the maneuver is performed, the system slowly zooms back out.

## Destination

If route guidance is not active, touch the NAV screen button on the Home Page to access the map view. Touch the Destination icon from the map view to enter a destination. Available methods of entering a destination are Address, Recent Destinations, Contacts, Intersection and POIs. Several options can be

selected to plan a route. Some destination items may be grayed out if no destination was previously entered or saved.

Touch the DESTINATION button to go to the destination entry views.

#### **Available Methods of Search**

- Address
- Intersection
- POIs
- Recent Destinations
- Contacts

## Navigation Next Turn Maneuver Alert



The navigation system has an alert feature. The navigation system may need to get the attention of the driver.

If not in the navigation application when a near maneuver prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. The alert contains the turn indicator and button to display the main navigation view, or dismiss the alert.

The alert also contains the name of the street to turn on and a countdown bar.

## Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

The keyboard is used in multiple locations throughout the system and can be used with many features. The navigation system uses the keyboard's alpha-numeric keyboard.

The keyboard can also be modified to include characters appropriate for the region configured in the vehicle settings.

✓ GO: Touch to search for the destination details of an address or place of interest entered in the text field. Once the GO screen button is

pressed, the activity indicator displays in the list of possible matches.

<sup>⋄</sup> (Dropdown Arrow): Touch to display a list of matches.

When there are multiple matches, a dropdown arrow is shown after the autocomplete text. This dropdown displays an entire list of matches. Touch the appropriate match without having to enter more text.

X (Delete): Touch to delete the last typed character. Press and hold this screen button to clear the entire text field. If the entire text field has been deleted, this screen button becomes an Undo button. Touching Undo will restore the deleted text.

**Exit:** Touch to return to the previous Map view.

**Sym**: Touch to show the symbol keyboard.

**Space**: Touch to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

**(Up Arrow)**: Touch to display the Interaction Selector.

## **Special Characters**

As the characters are typed on the keyboard, a pop-up of the letter touched displays above the key that was touched.

Continue to touch and hold, and any additional special characters associated with that letter are displayed around the current letter. To select one of the special characters, slide a finger left or right to select the special character.

## **Special Character List**

The following characters have special characters beneath them:

```
E-ÉÈÊËĘĖĒ
                           More Characters:
U-ŬÚÙÜÛ
                           1-1
                           S-¥£¢
1-1111111
O-ŌØŒÕÓÒÖÔ
                           & - 5
A-ÀÁÂÄÆÃÅÄ
                           " - «»
S - B(for lowercase s) Ś Š
                           (- [<del>{</del>
z-žžż
c-çćč
                           )-1}
                           .com - .net .org
N-ÑŃ
```

### **Saved Destinations**

Select a saved destination from the Contacts or Recent Destinations.

#### Contacts

Select the CONTACTS button to view the vehicle's contact list or a connected Bluetooth device. If a particular contact has a single address associated with it, that contact has a Quick Route list item function button next to it. Contacts without this Quick Route button either have multiple addresses or no address at all. Touch the Quick Route button to go to the Destination Details view.

Touch on an address, either from the Quick Route on the contact list or a specific address from the contact detail list, to go to the destination view showing that address on the map.

Trips from Contacts can be saved and recalled. The order is based on when the trip was last used. When the trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination name. If there are no saved trips, this list item is hidden.

## **Favorite Destinations**

- Destinations can be saved as Favorites for recall later.
   Depending on the favorite, when an address or POI favorite is recalled, the Destination Details View is shown
- When a favorite address is being routed to, it is shown active.
   Touch on the active favorite to suspend that route.
- Save locations as Favorites for recall later in the Destination Details View.
- Save trips from the Address Book.

## Storing Favorites from the Contact Details List

A contact name or any of the contact's information such as phone number, e-mail address, or address from Contact Details can be stored as a Favorite.

 Touch and drag up on the row of Interaction Selector buttons to reveal the Favorite buttons.

- Touch and hold on the favorite location while viewing a contact on the Contact Details List. The contact name and all contact information can be stored.
- Touch to save as a favorite. The favorite label will be the name of the contact.
- Touch on the Favorite to display the destination view.

## Storing Favorites from Map

Favorite locations can be stored from the Map View.

If not under route guidance, the current vehicle location will be saved as a Favorite. If under route guidance, the final destination will be saved.

Touch and drag up on the row of Interaction Selector buttons to reveal the Favorite buttons. Touch and hold on the favorite location from the Map View to save it.

#### **Route Guidance**

 Touch GO to go to the main navigation view and to start route guidance.

- If the system has an active route, a pop-up will display, "What would you like to do with this destination?" The options are: Add As Waypoint, Set New Destination, or Cancel.
- If a waypoint is added, it is placed in the location that leads to the most efficient route.
- There is a maximum number of waypoints that can be added to the system. When the maximum number of waypoints has been reached, a pop-up displays indicating that a waypoint must first be deleted before a new one can be added. The system will hold this waypoint into a Pending Waypoints list and will automatically be added to the route once a position is available, either by arriving at a waypoint, or by deleting one.
- To save a location, tap on the to display the Favorite buttons.
   Touch and hold on a favorite location to save the shown location as a Favorite.

## Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) and Distance

- When under route guidance, the system shows the ETA or travel time, or the driving distance.
- The ETA and travel time are calculated using any available traffic information.
- If in a waypoint trip, the ETA, travel time, and driving distance are all shown relative to the final destination.
- The final ETA is shown taking into consideration any time zone crossings that the route has traveled through.
- Touch the ETA information area to switch between the estimated arrival time, total driving time resulting, and driving distance.

## **Turn List**

Touch on the next turn indicator shown on the map to display the turn list or waypoint list. The Interaction Selector is minimized automatically. Touch ▲ to reveal the following options:

#### Destination

Touch the DESTINATION screen button to add a waypoint or change the destination while viewing the turn list. When the DESTINATION screen button is touched, the display shows the Destination screens.

#### **End Guidance**

Touch the End screen button to suspend the current route in the turn list. When the End screen button is touched, the turn list is exited, and the display returns to the main map view.

#### **Avoid Areas**

Touch the Avoid Areas screen button to select the highway name that is to be avoided. The system shows a pop-up asking how many miles or if the entire road should be avoided.

#### **Turn List**

 When under a waypoint trip, touch on the TURN LIST Interaction Selector button to

- show the turn list. When entering a turn list, the next maneuver instruction is spoken.
- The turn list title is the name or address of the destination.
   Touch on the information button next to the name of the destination to display the destination information.
- The turn list is sorted in order with the next maneuver at the top of the list and the subsequent maneuvers listed below it. The next maneuver is always highlighted upon entry into the Turn List to quickly show what the next maneuver is.
- Each maneuver indicates the distance between it and the previous maneuver or the vehicle's current location. The next maneuver at the top will count down until the maneuver is reached, and then the next maneuver will begin to count down.
- Each maneuver has an estimated time of arrival based on the current driving conditions.

## **Saved Trips**

Waypoint trips can be saved for later recall. Touch the + add button. in the waypoints list to save the trip to the Saved Trips list in the vehicle's contacts list. When trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination. Saved trips can be edited by selecting the Edit list item button to access the edit screen for the saved entry. The only field that can be edited is the name field. Touch on the name field to access the keyboard view. Type the name change. This change is automatically saved when executed by the keyboard.

The saved trip can also be deleted from the edit mode. Touch the delete button and a delete confirmation pop-up will display.

## Waypoints

 When under a waypoint trip, touch on the next turn indicator to bring up the waypoint list. The last waypoint view is shown, which could be Waypoints, Turn List, or Edit.

- The waypoint list is sorted in order with the next waypoint at the top of the list. Each waypoint is indicated with a numbered icon, starting with the next waypoint.
- To indicate what segment of the route is for the next waypoint, and what is for the remainder of the route, they appear in different colors.

## **Optimized Route**

- Touch the OPTIMIZE screen button to optimize the current waypoint trip.
- The optimization is done according to how the preferences are set for new routes, e.g., fastest route, shortest distance, or eco friendly.
- While the system is optimizing the route, the waypoint trip has the Activity Indicator displayed over top of it. If the system is calculating the ETA and travel distance for a waypoint, the Activity Indicator is displayed in the list header.

- When either a waypoint trip is first created, or additional waypoints are added to an existing waypoint trip, they are added in the location that would lead to an optimized route.
- If a destination is already planned and a waypoint is added, it is either added before or after the current destination, whichever leads to the most optimal route.
- If under an existing waypoint trip consisting of two or more destinations, any additional waypoints are added in the location that would lead to the most optimal route.

#### **Edit Route**

- Touch the EDIT screen button to modify the order or remove a waypoint from the route. Press the delete screen button to remove a waypoint from the route.
- A pop-up displays asking for confirmation of the waypoint deletion.

## **Settings**

A few of the setting options change the way the navigation system displays or reacts while in use.

- 1. Touch the Settings screen button on the Home Page.
- Touch the scroll bar until the desired option displays. Select the desired settings to change.

#### Voice

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. See *Voice Recognition* (*If equipped*) ⇒ 127.

Touch the voice screen button to display the Voice menu.

**Confidence Threshold:** Touch to change the confidence threshold to Confirm More or Confirm Less.

Prompt Length: Touch to change the prompt length to Short or Long.

Audio Feedback Speed: Touch to change the audio feedback speed to Slow, Medium, or Fast,

Display "What can I say?" Tips: Touch to change the display tips to ON orOFF

## Display

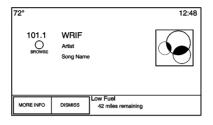
Mode: Touch Mode to change the screen background. This setting controls map colors.

- The Auto setting adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.
- The Day setting brightens the map background.
- The Night setting darkens the map background.

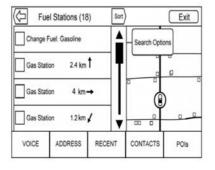
Calibrate Touchscreen: Touch to display the Touchscreen Calibration Screen.

Turn Display Off: Touch to turn the Display option off.

## Low Fuel Alert



If the vehicle reaches a low fuel level, the system displays an alert about the low fuel condition. Touch the MORE INFO screen button to view nearby gas stations, and start quidance if desired.



If the remaining driving distance is available from the system, this is included in the alert

## Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. See Navigation 

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* 

⇒ 125 and *If the System Needs*Service 

⇒ 126.

## **Vehicle Positioning**

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.

- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains have been installed.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery is disconnected for several days.

 The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

# Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.

- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See Maps \$ 117.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

# If the System Needs Service

## **Map Data Updates**

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data can be updated, provided that the map information has changed.

For questions about the operation of the navigation system or the update process, contact your dealership.

# Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* \$\pi\$ 126.

## **Voice Recognition**

# Voice Recognition (If equipped)

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. This feature can be started by pressing either the button on the steering wheel or touching so not touchscreen display.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two button presses such as selecting a song or artist to play from a media device would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down are audio features that are easily

performed by pressing one or two buttons, and are not supported by voice commands.

Voice recognition can be used just when the ignition is on.

## **Using Voice Recognition**

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialized. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialization may take a few moments.

- 1. Press 🖟 on the steering wheel control to activate voice recognition, or touch 🎉 on the infotainment touchscreen on the center stack.
- The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt followed by a beep.
- Wait until after the beep completes, then clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

Press № to interrupt any voice recognition system prompt. For example, if the prompt seems

to be taking too long to finish, press 🎉 again and the beep should happen right away.

There are two voice prompt modes supported:

- Long verbal prompts: The longer prompts provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: The short prompts provide simple instructions about what can be stated.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

## **Prompts and Screen Displays**

While a voice recognition session is active, there will be corresponding buttons on screens displayed.

Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted.

Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands, or some selections may expedite a session. If a selection is made using a manual control, the dialog will

progress in the same way as if the selection was made through a voice command. Once the system is able to complete the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialog stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching on an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

## **Cancelling Voice Recognition**

- Touch the Home screen button. Pressing this button will terminate a voice recognition session which was initiated by pressing the button on the radio touchscreen.
- Touch or say "Cancel" or "Exit" to terminate the voice recognition session and display the screen from which voice recognition was initiated.
- Press on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice session and display the screen from which voice recognition was initiated.

## Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are either naturally stated in sentence form, or direct commands that state the application and the task.

Most languages do not support natural language commands in sentence form. For those languages, use direct commands like the examples shown on the display.

#### For best results:

- Listen for the prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or reply.
- Say "Help" or look at the screen display for example commands.
- A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing <sup>№</sup>∑.
  - For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete, press %.

- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow. Use direct commands without a lot of extra words.
- Usually Phone and Audio commands can be spoken in a single command.
  - For example say, "Call Dave Smith at work," "Play" followed by the artist or song name, or "Tune" followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations are too complex for a single command. First, say a command that explains the type of destination needed, such as I want directions to an "Address," "Navigate to an intersection," "I need to find a Place of Interest or POI," or "Directions to a Contact." The system responds by requesting more details. After saying "Place of Interest," only major chains are available by name. Chains are businesses with at least 20 locations. For

other POIs, say the name of a category like "Restaurants," "Shopping Malls," or "Hospitals."

There is no need to memorize specific command words. Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be "Call 555-1212." Examples of these direct commands are displayed on most of the screens while a voice session is active. If "Phone" or "Phone Commands," is stated, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered.

If the phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example "Call Dave Smith at work."

## Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list. A selection

can be made by manually selecting the item, or by speaking the line number for the item to select.

When a screen contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other screens. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a screen during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt "Make your selection from the list using the manual controls or press the Back button to try again."

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The screen returns back to the screen where voice recognition was initiated.

### The Back Command

Say "Back" or press the BACK button to go to the previous screen.

If in voice recognition, and "Back" is stated all the way through to the initial screen, then "Back" is stated one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

### Help

Say "Help" on any voice recognition screen and the help prompt for the screen is played. Additionally, a pop-up displays a text version of the help prompt. Depending on how voice recognition was initiated, the Help pop-up will either display on the instrument cluster or the infotainment touchscreen. Touch the Dismiss button to make the pop-up go away.

Pressing w while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt and a beep will be heard. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

## Voice Recognition for the Radio

Some audio screens have a voice recognition button ( $\mathbb{N}^{\frac{1}{2}}$ ) to launch audio voice recognition. If the voice

button is touched in a radio screen, the voice commands for radio and media features are available.

- "Switch to AM": Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.
- "Switch to FM": Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.
- "Tune to <AM frequency> AM": Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like "nine fifty").
- "Tune to <FM frequency> FM": Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like "one o one point one").

# Voice Recognition for Audio My Media

If browsing My Media when the voice button is selected, the voice recognition commands for My Media features are available.

"Play Artist": Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

- "Play Artist <artist name>":
  Begin playback of the media
  selection identified in the command.
- "Play Album": Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.
- "Play Album <album name>": Begin playback of the identified album name in the command.
- "Play Song": Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.
- "Play Song <song name>": Begin playback of the identified song name in the command.
- "Play Genre": Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.
- "Play Genre <genre name>": Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.
- "Play Playlist": Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.
- "Play Playlist <playlist name>": Begin playback of the identified playlist in the command.
- "Play <device name>": Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device

- name is the name displayed on the screen when the device is first selected as an audio sourced.
- "Play Chapter": Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.
- "Play Chapter <chapter name>": Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.
- "Play Audiobook": Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.
- "Play Audiobook <audiobook name>": Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.
- "Play Episode": Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.
- "Play Episode <episode name>": Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.
- "Play Podcast": Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.
- "Play Podcast podcast
  name>" : Begin playback of the
  media selection identified in the
  command.

"My Media": Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

## Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of song titles by voice at the highest level if the number of songs exceeds the maximum limit.

Voice command option changes through media content limits are:

- Song files including other individual files of all media types such as audiobook chapters and podcast episodes.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of song files and albums is less than 4,000. When the number of song files connected to the system is between 4,000 and 8,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like "Play <song name>."

The restriction is that the command "Play Song" must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 4,000 albums, but less than 8,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, "Play <album name>." The command "Play Album" must first be spoken; the system will then ask for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of songs has exceeded approximately 8,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 4,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initializing process.

## Voice Recognition for Navigation

"Navigation": Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

"Navigation Commands": Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

"Destination Address": Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, and city and state.

"Destination Intersection": Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination intersection.

"Destination Place of Interest":
Begin a dialog to enter a destination
Place of Interest category or major
brand name (if equipped).

Not all brand names of businesses are available for voice entry. Most major chains, such as chains with more than 20 locations, should be available to search for by name, but the name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as fast food, hotels, or banks.

"Destination Contact": Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination contact name.

"Cancel Route": End route guidance.

## Voice Recognition for the Phone

"Call <contact name>": Initiate a call to an entered contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

"Call <contact name> At Home,"
"At Work," "On Mobile," or "On
Other": Initiate a call to an entered
contact and location at home, at
work, on mobile device, or on
another phone.

"Call <phone number>": Initiate a call to a standard phone number seven or 10 digits in length.

"Pair Phone": Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow instructions on the radio display.

"Switch Phone": Select a different phone for outgoing calls.

"Voice Keypad": Begins a dialog to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command "Delete" will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command "Call" will start dialing the number.

"Voice Mail": Initiate a call to voice mail numbers.

### Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone, for example, Siri or Voice Command. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the mobile phone supports this feature. To activate the phone voice recognition system, press and hold if on the steering wheel for a few seconds.

## **Phone**

## **Bluetooth (Overview)**

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many cell phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the cell phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone.
   Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries.
   If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.

 Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle.
 The system may not work with all cell phones. See "Pairing" in this section.

## **⚠** Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

## **⚠** Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system.

## **Bluetooth Controls**

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

## **Steering Wheel Controls**

(End Call): Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

## **Infotainment System Controls**

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System*  $\Rightarrow$  103.

**Phone:** Touch this screen button on the Home Page to enter the phone main menu.

## **Audio System**

When using the Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Turn the volume knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

# Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System*  $\Rightarrow$  103.

## **Pairing**

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

## **Pairing Information**

- A Bluetooth phone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a phone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- One Bluetooth device can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired

cell phone in the order that they were last used in the system. To link to a different paired phone, see "Linking to a Different Phone" later in this section.

## Pairing a Phone

- Touch the Phone screen button.
- Select Phone and select Pair Device.
- A four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN) appears on the display. The PIN, if required, may be used in Step 5.
- Start the pairing process on the mobile phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process.
- Locate "MyLink" on the phone's display. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3 or confirm the six-digit code shown on the display. After the PIN is successfully entered or the code is confirmed, the

- system responds with "<Device name> has been successfully paired" when the pairing process is complete.
- If "MyLink" does not appear, turn the phone off or remove the phone battery and retry.
- If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select always accept and allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
- 8. Repeat Steps 1–7 to pair additional phones.

## Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

- Touch the Phone screen button.
- 2. Select Phones.

## **Disconnecting a Connected Phone**

- Touch the Phone screen button.
- Select Phones.

 Touch the X next to the phone to disconnect and follow the on screen prompts.

## **Deleting a Paired Phone**

Only disconnected phones can be deleted.

- 1. Touch the Phone screen button.
- 2. Select Phones.
- Touch the <sup>○</sup> next to the phone to delete and follow the on screen prompts.

## Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

- Touch the Phone screen button.
- 2. Select Phones.
- Select the new phone to link to from the not connected device list.

## Switching to Handset or Handsfree Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display "Call View."

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset screen button to switch to the handset mode. The screen button changes to Handsfree once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handset.
- While the active call is handset, touch the Handsfree screen button to switch to the hands free mode. The screen button changes to Handset once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handsfree.

## Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal cell phone contact information for all phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with 136

the phone settings and operation. Verify the cell phone supports this feature.

When supported, the Contacts and Recent Calls menus are automatically available.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the cell phone.

The Recent Calls menu accesses the recent call list(s) from your cell phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

- 1. Touch the Phone screen button.
- 2. Select Contacts.
- 3. Select the name to call.
- 4. Select the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recent Calls menu:

- Touch the Phone screen button.
- Select Recent.

3. Select the name or number to call.

## Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialing the numbers:

- Touch the Phone screen button.
- 2. Select Keypad and enter a phone number.
- 3. Select Call to start dialling the number.

## Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

## **Accepting a Call**

There are a few ways to accept a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

## **Declining a Call**

There are a few ways to decline a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

## **Call Waiting**

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the phone service carrier to work.

## Accepting a Call

There are a few ways to accept a call-waiting call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Switch on the infotainment display.

## **Declining a Call**

There are a few ways to decline a call-waiting call:

Press 
 on the steering wheel controls.

Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

## Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch the phone icon on the Home Page to display "Call View." While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

## **Three-Way Calling**

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the phone service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

- In the Call View, select Add to add another call.
- Initiate the second call by selecting from RECENT, CONTACTS, or KEYPAD.
- When the second call is active, touch Merge to conference the three-way call together.

 Once all calls are merged, the Merge button becomes an Unmerge button. Touch to unmerge the calls. Some phone service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

## **Ending a Call**

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch End on the infotainment display to end all existing calls, or touch End next to a call to end only that call.

Some phone service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

# Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

Touch the Phone screen button.

- While in the Call View, touch to raise the Interaction Selector
- 3. Select Keypad and enter the number.

## **Voice Mail**

The default voice mail number is the phone number of the currently connected phone. The voice mail number can be changed in Bluetooth settings.

To dial a voice mail number:

- 1. Touch the Phone screen button.
- 2. Select Voice Mail.
- 3. Select Call.
- 4. Enter the DTMF tones using the keypad if needed.

# Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)

# Using Bluetooth Voice Recognition

To use voice recognition, press the 

½ button on the steering wheel. Use the commands below for the various voice features. For additional information, say "Help" while in a voice recognition menu. See *Voice Recognition* (*If equipped*) ⇒ 127 for help using voice recognition commands.

## Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

## Using the "Dial" or "Call" Command

To call a number:

- 1. Press ⋈ . The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
- 2. Say "Dial" or "Call" followed by the complete phone number.

Use the "Voice Keypad" command for international numbers or special numbers which include \* or #.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

To call using a contact from your phone book:

- Press <sup>1</sup>√2. The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
- Say "Dial" or "Call" and then say the contact name. For example "Call John at Work."

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

## Using the "Switch Phone" Command

- Press <sup>√</sup>2. The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
- 2. After the tone, say "Switch Phone." The system displays a list of phones to select.

## Using the "Voice Keypad" Command

- Press <sup>L√2</sup>. The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
- After the tone, say "Voice Keypad." The system allows entry of special numbers and characters.

## Using the "Voice Mail" Command

- 1. Press (. The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
- After the tone, say "Voice Mail."
   The system dials the voice mail number of the connected phone.

## Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained. This includes phone pairing information. For directions on how to delete this information, see "Deleting a Paired Phone."

## **Text Messaging**

If equipped, the infotainment system may allow text messages to be received and replied to. Received messages can also be read aloud.

Before using the text messaging feature, check to see if the phone is compatible.

See your dealer for details.

#### **Text Menu**

**Inbox**: Touch to display incoming messages. To view a message, press on the name of the sender.

Press • to listen to the text message. Press BACK on the faceplate or press the Back screen button to go back to the previous menu.

**Settings**: See "Text Settings" later in this section.

**Reply :** Touch to reply using a predefined text message. See "Text Settings."

**Call**: Touch to place a call to the sender of the text message.

#### Note

- There may be previous configuration required in your mobile to have this function working properly.
- Due to the variety of devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing this function.
- Any inquiries regrading your phone functionality, refer to the device manual.

## Viewing a Text Message

While viewing a text message:

- Touch Reply to reply using a predefined text message.
- Touch Call to place a call to the sender of the text message.

## **Viewing Sender Information**

If equipped, touch the name of the sender to view sender information if this information matches contact information already stored.

## Select a Predefined Message:

Touch to select from a set of quick messages. Touch the message to send.

## **Predefined Messages**

These are short text messages that can be used to send so responses will not have to be typed.

The messages can be deleted or a new message can be added.

To add a new message:

- Touch Text Settings, then press Manage Predefined Messages.
- While in the predefined messages list view, select Add New Predefined Message and a keyboard displays.
- Type a new message and touch the Check button when done to add the message.
   Press BACK on the faceplate or touch the Back screen button to go back to the predefined messages list.

## **Memory Full**

This message may display if there is no more room on the phone to store messages.

## **Text Settings**

**Text Alerts:** When on, this feature will display an alert when a new text message has been received. Touch to turn on or off.

Manage Predefined Messages: Touch to add, change, or delete predefined messages.

# Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

If equipped, Android Auto™ and/or Apple CarPlay™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available, a PROJECTION icon will appear on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

- Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google™ Play store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
- Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

The PROJECTION icon on the Home Page will change to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay depending on the phone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, press the Android Auto and/or Apple Carplay icon on the Home Page to launch.

For further information about Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, seek the assistance of your dealer. Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto or Apple CarPlay support at https://www.apple.com/br/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time.

If Android Auto device is connected while another device was paired, the switch devices pop up message will appear as follows:

"Connecting Android Auto, will disconnect Bluetooth Device (Name)."

#### Note

For using Android Auto function, the date of Infotainment System should be the same as the Android Auto device.

#### Note

For your safety, some applications are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

#### Note

To end Android Auto, disconnect the phone from the USB port or change the USB setting on the phone.

In some cases, it might be necessary to unpair the phone from the radio before plugging the USB cable to start the Android Auto.

## **Settings**

#### Note

Depending on vehicle version and market, some of the functions described below might not be available.

The Settings menu allows adjustment of different vehicle and radio features. The menu may contain the following:

## **Time and Date**

Touch SET TIME to edit the time and then touch ∧ or ∨ to increase or decrease hours, minutes, and AM or PM. Press 12Hr or 24Hr for 12 or 24 hour clock.

Touch SET DATE to edit the date and then press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  to increase or decrease month, day, or year.

Touch CLOCK DISPLAY to choose ON or OFF to show the time in the screen.

## Language

This will set the display language in the radio, instrument panel, and voice recognition. Press Language and select the appropriate language. Press ( to go back to the previous menu.

## Valet Mode (If Equipped)

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit top speed, power, and access to vehicle storage locations (if equipped).

To enable valet mode:

- 1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
- 2. Touch Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
- 3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch LOCK or UNLOCK to lock or unlock the system. Touch **⟨** to go back to the previous menu.

### Radio

Touch to display the Radio Menu and the following may display:

- Manage Favourites: Touch to highlight a favorite to edit. Touch Rename to rename the favorite or Delete to delete it. Touch and hold the station to drag it to a new location. Touch Done to go back to the previous menu.
- Number of Favorites Shown:
   Touch to set the number of favorites to display. Select Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, or 60. Auto will adjust the number of favorite locations that can be seen. Touch ( to go back to the previous menu.
- Audible Touch Feedback: This feature adjusts the sound of the touch. This feature can be turned ON or OFF.
- Auto Volume: If equipped, this feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See AM-FM Radio 

  105.

Maximum Startup Volume: This feature sets the maximum startup volume. If the vehicle is started and the volume is greater than this level, the volume is adjusted to this level. To set the maximum startup volume, touch + or - to increase or decrease. Touch \( \bigcup \) to go back to the previous menu.

#### Vehicle

- 1. Press Settings on main screen of Infotainment System.
- 2. Select Vehicle menu.
- The following items will display:
  - Climate and Air Quality.
  - Collision / Detection Systems.
  - Comfort and Convenience.
  - Lighting.
  - Power Door Locks.
  - Remote Lock, Unlock, Start.

## **Climate and Air Quality**

- Auto Fan Speed.
  - Select the desired option from the list.
- Auto Rear Demist (if equipped).
  - Select On or Off.

## **Collision / Detection Systems**

- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (if equipped).
  - Select On or Off.
- Side Blind Spot Alert (if equipped).
  - Select On or Off.

## **Comfort and Convenience**

- Chime Volume.
  - Press or + to set the chime volume.
- Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear (If equipped).
  - Select On or Off.

## Lighting

- Vehicle Locator Lights.
  - Select On or Off.

- Exit Lighting.
  - Select the desired option from the list.

#### **Power Door Locks**

- Auto Door Lock.
  - Select On or Off.

#### Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

- · Remote Unlock Light Feedback.
  - Select Off or Flash Lights.
- Remote Lock Feedback.
  - Select the desired option from the list.
- Remote Door Unlock.
  - Select All Doors or Driver Door.
- Relock Remote Unlocked Doors.
  - Select On or Off.
- Remote Window Operation.
  - Select On or Off.

#### Bluetooth

From the Bluetooth screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Pair New Device: Touch to add a new device
- Device Management: Touch to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.
- Ringtones: Touch to change the ring tone for the specific phone.
   The phone does not need to be connected to change the ring tone.
- Voice Mail Numbers: This feature displays the voice mail number for all connected phones. The voice mail number may be changed by touching the EDIT button, typing in the new number, and touching SAVE.
   Touch ( to go back to the previous menu.

#### Voice

From the Voice screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Confidence Threshold: Select Confirm More for a system response to a command. Select Confirm Less for the system to proceed with the command without responding.
- Prompt Length: Select Short for brief, direct feedback or Long for more information feedback.
   Touch (Back to go to the previous menu.
- Audio Feedback Speed: Touch Slow, Medium, or Fast for feedback speed. Touch ( to go back to the previous menu.
- Display "What can I say?" Tips: Touch ON or OFF to change the display tips.

#### Display

From the Display screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Calibrate Touchscreen: Touch to calibrate the touchscreen and follow the prompts. Touch \( \) to go back to the previous menu.
- Turn Display Off: Touch to turn the display off. Touch anywhere on the display area or any faceplate button again to turn the display on.

#### Rear Camera

Touch to display the Rear Camera menu. See "Driver Assistance Systems" in the owner manual.

- Guidance Lines: This feature can be turn ON or OFF.
- Rear Park Assist Symbols: This feature can be turn ON or OFF.

#### Return to Factory Settings

Touching Continue restores all factory settings.

Select Return to Factory Settings and the following list may display:

- Restore Vehicle Settings: Restores factory vehicle settings. Touch Restore Vehicle Settings. Touch Cancel or Continue. If continue is touched. a confirmation pop-up will appear indicating the vehicle settings have been restored.
- Clear All Private Data: If available, use to erase personal private data before loaning or selling the vehicle. Touch Clear All Private Data, Touch Cancel or Continue. Touch the \ Back screen button to go back to the last menu.
- Restore Radio Settings: Restores factory radio settings. Touch Restore Radio Settings. Touch Cancel or Continue. If continue is touched, a confirmation pop-up will appear indicating the radio settings have been restored.

Press ■ BACK on the faceplate or touch the Back screen button to go back to the main settings menu.

### Trademarks and **License Agreements**

#### Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Made for

□ iPod □ iPhone

"Made for iPod." and "Made for iPhone." mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance. iPhone®, iPod®, iPod classic<sup>®</sup>, iPod nano<sup>®</sup>, iPod shuffle<sup>®</sup>, and iPod touch<sup>®</sup> are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

#### **RMVB**



Portions of this software are included under license from RealNetworks, Inc. Copyright 1995-2012, RealNetworks, Inc. All rights reserved

#### Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### Schedule I: Gracenote EULA (if equipped)



Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and

the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

#### **Gracenote Terms of Use**

This application or device contains software from Gracenote. Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such

content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote

Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote

Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. INCLUDING. BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2014. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

#### **MPEG4-AVC (H.264)**

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLÍANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO, NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA. LLC. SEE HTTP:// WWW.MPFGLA.COM.

#### VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE

PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS **ENCODED BY A CONSUMER** ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO, NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA. LLC. SEE HTTP:// WWW MPEGLA COM

#### MPEG4-Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

#### MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

#### **WMA**

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

#### Map End User License Agreement

#### **END USER TERMS**

The Map Data Disc ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC ("HERE") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase<sup>®</sup>.

HERE holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

© United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled, or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

#### **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce. copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

#### Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones. palmtop and handheld computers. pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

#### Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting

comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

#### **No Warranty**

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

#### **Disclaimer of Warranty**

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS" AND BOSCH (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF

NON-INFRINGEMENT. MERCHANTABILITY. SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY BOSCH (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

#### **Disclaimer of Liability**

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS
(INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS
AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE
LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF
ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR
ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE
NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE
CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION
ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY
OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR
INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT

FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA: OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT. REVENUE. CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT. INDIRECT. INCIDENTAL. SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA. ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA. OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS. WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

#### **Export Control**

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

#### **Governing Law**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

#### **Government End Users**

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use." and be treated in accordance with such Notice:



Maps for Life

#### NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

NAME:

#### **HERE North America, LLC**

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

### 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE North America, LLC prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

#### Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2014 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

#### Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2014 The FreeType Project (http://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

#### **Open Source SW**

The open source code used in this device can be downloaded at the webpage shown in the information at the center stack display. Further information concerning the OSS licenses is shown in the center stack display.

#### QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2014, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

#### Part C - EULA

Copyright 2014, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to

all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer. or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle. reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices. labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT
OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY
APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS
LICENSORS PROVIDE THE
SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS,
WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR
CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND,
EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED
INCLUDING, WITHOUT
LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES
OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE,
NON-INFRINGEMENT.

MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC. ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS, YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT
OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY
APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN
THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR
GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN
NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS
AFFILIATES OR THEIR
LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU
UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY,
WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING
NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR
OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES,

INCLUDING ANY DIRECT. INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL. OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE. PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### **WMA**

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

#### Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at http://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html.

#### **END USER NOTICE**

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

#### Introduction

#### Infotainment

Two infotainment systems are available.

This section describes the infotainment system without built-in Navigation system. For the system with built-in Navigation, see *Introduction* ⇒ 100.

#### Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

#### **Marning**

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

#### **⚠** Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These

functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the steering wheel controls.

#### Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by touching a single button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

#### **Theft-Deterrent Feature**

The infotainment system has an electronic security system installed to prevent theft.

The infotainment system only works in the vehicle in which it was first installed, and cannot be used in another vehicle.

#### Overview



#### 1. ს

- Press to turn the power on.
- Press and hold to turn the power off.
- Press to mute the system when on.
- Turn to decrease or increase the volume.

#### 2.

 Radio: Press to automatically search for available radio stations with good reception.  USB/Bluetooth Music/ Movies/Pictures: Press to go to the next content. Press and hold to fast forward.

#### 3. ◀◀

- Radio: Press to automatically search for available radio stations with good reception.
- USB/Bluetooth Music/ Movies/Pictures: Press to go to the previous content. Press and hold to fast rewind.

#### 4.

 Press to go to the Home Page. See Home Page

 ⇒ 155.

#### 5. C

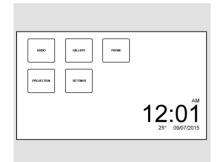
 Press this button to access the Phone screen. (If there is no connected phone, the monitor will show the Device Management Menu to allow you to connect a previously paired phone or establish a new Bluetooth enabled phone connection.)

#### **Home Page**

#### **Touchscreen Buttons**

Touchscreen buttons show on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may gray out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

#### **Home Page Features**



Press **1** to go to the Home Page.

**Audio:** Touch to select AM, FM, USB/iPod/Bluetooth Audio, or AUX.

**Gallery**: Touch to view a picture or watch a movie.

Phone: Touch to activate the phone features (if equipped). See Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) 

⇒ 138 or Bluetooth (Overview) 

⇒ 133 or Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) 

⇒ 134.

**Projection :** Touch to access supported devices when connected. See *USB Port* ⇒ 109.

**Settings**: Touch to access the Settings menu. See *Operation* 

⇒ 156.

#### **Edit Mode**

In edit mode, the home page can be rearranged.

- 1. Press **d** on the control panel.
- 2. Press and hold the any menu to enter the edit mode.
- Drag and drop the desired menu to change the position.
- 4. Press to exit the edit mode.

#### Note

- The edit mode exits after a timeout of inactivity of 30 seconds.
- If you drag and drop the menu on the arrow, the menu will be arranged on the previous or next page.
- The maximum number of edit mode pages is three.

# Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)



#### 1. Volume button

- Move the button upward to VOL + button to increase the volume.
- Move the button downward to - button to decrease the volume.

#### 2. 🗸 button

- Press this button to decline an incoming call or end a current call.
- Press this button to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

#### 3. We button

- When there is no connected Bluetooth device, the Infotainment system executes the Bluetooth device connection.
- When there is a connected Bluetooth device, press the button to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold the button to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.

 If an iPhone is connected, press and hold to enter the Siri function.

#### 4. $\triangle / \nabla$ (seek)

 When ∆ /∇ are pressed up/down.

In Radio modes, changes broadcast frequencies saved.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, changes the file.

• When  $\triangle / \overline{\lor}$  are pressed and held.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, rewind or fast forward the file.

#### Operation

#### **Radio Controls**

The infotainment system is operated by using the pushbuttons, menus shown on the display, and steering wheel controls.

#### Turning the System On or Off

U: Press to turn the radio on.
Press and hold to turn the radio off.

#### **Automatic Switch-Off**

If the infotainment system has been turned on after the ignition is turned off, the system will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

If the ignition is turned off and the user opens the driver door of the vehicle, the system is turned off automatically.

#### **Volume Control**

じ: Turn to increase or decrease. Press when the system is on to mute and unmute the system.

#### Note

When changing the audio source, a difference in volume may be experienced.

#### Radio

#### AM-FM Radio

#### Playing the Radio

ப்: Press to turn on, mute, or unmute the system. Press and hold to turn off the system.

#### Selecting a Band

- Press ⁴.
- Touch AUDIO.
- 3. Touch Source.
- 4. Select AM, FM, DAB, USB, Bluetooth or AUX input.

The last station that was playing starts playing again.

#### Selecting a Station

#### **Seek Tuning**

If the radio station is not known:

Press ★ or ▶ to automatically search for available radio stations.

#### **Direct Tune**

From the AM or FM menu:

- 1. Touch Tune.
- Enter the station number.
- 3. Touch Go.

#### **Favorite**

- 2. Touch the station to select it.

#### **Station List**

- 1. From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu.
- 2. Select Station List.
- Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list. Touch the station to select it.

#### **Update Station List**

- From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu, then touch Update Station List. The broadcasting list updating will begin.
- During the AM or FM broadcasting list update, touch Cancel to stop the updates.

#### **RDS**

Setting the RDS function in the FM radio RDS supported.

 From the FM menu, turn on or off the RDS.

#### Menu

Touch to choose between available menus for the current source.

#### Storing a Station as a Favorite

Stations from all bands can be stored in any order in the favorite pages.

Up to 25 stations can be stored.

#### **Storing Stations**

To store the station to a position in the list, touch the corresponding button 1–5 until a beep is heard.

- 1. Select the desired station.

 Touch and hold any of the preset buttons to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favorites page.

To change a preset button, tune to the new desired radio station and touch and hold the preset button.

#### **Radio Reception**

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

#### FΜ

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically reduces interference, some static can occur,

especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

#### AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

#### **Cell Phone Usage**

Cell phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

#### **Radio Reception**

#### Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) is an innovative and universal broadcasting system.

#### **DAB Radio**

#### Listening to DAB radio

- 1. Press **a** on the control panel.
- 2. Touch AUDIO.
- 3. Touch Source.
- Select DAB on the screen. The DAB radio of the most recent listened station is displayed.

### Searching for broadcasting automatically

Press ◀ or ▶ on the control panel to automatically search for available station with good reception

### Storing a broadcasting as a Favorite

- 1. Select the desired station.
- Touch and hold any of the preset buttons to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favorites page.

Up to 5 favorites pages can be saved, and each page can store up to five radio station.

To change a preset button, tune to the new desired radio station and touch and hold the preset button.

### Listening to PRESET button directly

- Touch any of the preset buttons to directly listen to the radio station saved to that button.

#### General operation of the menu

- 1. Touch Menu on the DAB radio screen.
- Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.

#### Categories

- From the DAB menu, press theCategories to display the DAB category list. The DAB category list information is displayed.
- Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list. Touch the station to select it.

#### Note

In case of the DAB mode, only the selected category is displayed in the category list.

#### **Update Station List**

- From the DAB menu, press the Update Station List to display the update DAB station list. The DAB broadcasting list update will proceed.
- 2. During the DAB broadcasting list update, press Cancelto stop it from saving changes.

#### **DAB Announcements**

- From the DAB menu, find the RDS by touching ▲ or ▼.
- Select the desired option. (All, News, Weather, Sports, Finance, Travel, Event, Special, Radio info, Warning, Traffic, Alarm)

#### **DAB Settings**

L Band

#### Note

Additional L-Band frequencies may not be used

Intellitext

#### Note

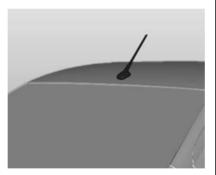
Some countries may not support this feature

- DAB to DAB Linking (if available): If the current DAB broadcasting is disconnected, find the same DAB broadcasting automatically.
- DAB to FM Linking (if available):
   If the current DAB broadcasting is disconnected, find the same FM broadcasting automatically.

To configure the DAB settings options:

- From the DAB menu, find the desired setting by touching ▲ or ▼.
- 2. Select on or off.

#### **Fixed Mast Antenna**



To remove the roof antenna, rotate it anticlockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

#### Caution

To avoid damaging the antenna or the roof panel, be sure to remove the antenna before entering the automatic car wash or a place with a low ceiling.

Install the antenna firmly.

Whenever using the roof rack system, check if the antenna is not obstructing the area that is being used by the roof rack system or the cargo.

#### **Audio Players**

#### **USB Port**

#### **Using the USB Port**

The infotainment system can play music or movies by connecting a device to the USB port.

#### **USB Support**

The vehicle may have a USB port on the main storage under the armrest, and if so uses the USB 2.0 standard.

Not all iPods and USB drives are compatible with the USB port.

Make sure the iPod has the latest firmware from Apple® for proper operation. iPod firmware can be updated using the latest iTunes® application. See www.apple.com/br/itunes.

For help with identifying your iPod, go to www.apple.com/br/support.

The USB port can play both lower and upper case .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav files stored on a USB storage device.

#### **USB Supported Folder Structure**

The infotainment system supports up to 15 stages of folder structure.

### Connecting a USB Storage Device or iPod/iPhone

To connect a USB storage device, connect the device to the USB port.

To connect an iPod/iPhone, connect one end of the device's cable to the iPod/iPhone and the other end to the USB port.

The iPod/iPhone charges while it is connected to the vehicle if the ignition is in position 1 or 2. See Starting the Engine ⇒ 192. When the vehicle is turned off, the iPod/iPhone automatically powers off and will not charge or draw power from the vehicle's battery.

For more information on USB usage, see "Audio System Information" under later in this section.

#### **USB Port (Audio System)**

The infotainment system can play the music files contained in the USB storage device or iPod/iPhone products.

## Audio System Information Using MP3/WMA/OGG/WAV Files

- Music files with .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav file name extensions can be played.
- MP3 files that can be played: Bit rate: 8 kbps to 320 kbps.
   Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, and 16 kHz.
- Files with a bit rate above 128 kbps will result in higher quality sound.
- ID3 Tag information for MP3 files, such as the album name and the artist, can be displayed.
- To display album title, track title, and artist information, the file should be compatible with the ID3 Tag V1 and V2 formats.

### Using USB Storage Devices and iPod/iPhone

- Use a USB or flash memory type storage device. Do not connect using a USB adaptor.
- Do not connect and reconnect the USB device repeatedly in a short time, as this may cause static electricity and problems using the device.
- Use a USB device with a metal connecting terminal.
- Connection with i-Stick Type USB storage devices may be faulty due to vehicle vibration.
- Do not touch the USB connecting terminal.
- The time it takes to process files will depend on the USB storage device type and capacity, and the type of files stored.
- Some USB storage device files may not be compatible.
- Up to two USB devices and one iPod can be played through a USB hub. All devices may not be supported, depending on the

- performance of the USB hub. If there is not enough power supply, it may not operate normally.
- Do not disconnect the USB storage device while it is playing. This may cause damage to the product or affect the performance of the USB device.
- Disconnect the USB storage device when the ignition is turned off. If the ignition is turned on while the USB device is connected, the USB device may be damaged or may not operate normally.
- USB storage devices can only be connected for playing music/ movies and viewing photo files.
- Do not use the USB terminal to charge USB accessory equipment. The heat generated may cause performance issues or damage.
- Music files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied cannot be played.

- Some iPod/iPhone product models may not support the connectivity or functionality of this product.
- Only connect the iPod/iPhone with connection cables supported by iPod/iPhone products. Other connection cables cannot be used.
- The iPod/iPhone may be damaged if it is connected to the vehicle with the ignition on.
   When not in use, disconnect the iPod/iPhone.
- When the iPod/iPhone is connected to the USB port with an iPod/iPhone cable, Bluetooth music is not supported.
- The iPod/iPhone playback functions and the information displayed may be different when played on the infotainment system.



 Refer to the table for the classification items related to the search function provided by the iPod/iPhone.

#### **USB Player**

#### Playing Music from a USB Device

- Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.



If the USB device is already connected:

- Press <sup>1</sup>√2.
- Touch AUDIO.
- Touch Source.
- Touch USB.

To stop the USB device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the USB device, select another function, then remove the USB device.

#### **Pause**

- Touch II to pause.
- Touch ▶ to resume.

#### **Changing to Next/Previous Files**

- Touch 

  to change to the next file.
- Touch within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

### Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch ◀ after five seconds of the playback time.

#### Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold ◀ or ▶ during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

#### Playing a File Randomly

Touch ¾ during playback.

- ON: Plays all files randomly.
- OFF : Returns to normal playback.

#### Using the USB Music Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the desired menu.

#### **Browse Music**

- 1. Touch Browse Music.
- 2. Touch the desired music.

#### **Tone Settings**

 Touch Tone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See "Tone Settings" under "Radio Controls" in Operation \$\phi\$ 156.

#### **Auto Volume**

 Touch Auto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See "Auto Volume" under "Radio Controls" in Operation 

156.

#### MTP (Media Transfer Protocol)

- Connect a MTP supported device.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the MTP device.
- If a non-readable MTP device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.

#### iPod/iPhone Player

This feature is limited to models supporting the iPod/iPhone connection.

#### **Playing Music Files**

- Connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB port.
- Play will start from the previously played point after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.

If the iPod/iPhone is already connected:

- 1. Press 1.
- Touch AUDIO.
- Touch Source.
- Touch iPod.

To stop the device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source. To remove the device, select another function, then remove the device.

#### **Pause**

- Touch II to pause.
- Touch ▶ to resume.

#### **Changing to Next/Previous Song**

- Touch to change to the next song.
- Touch within three seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

### Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch ◀ after three seconds of the playback time.

#### Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold ◀ or ▶ during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

#### Playing a File Randomly

Touch ¾ during playback.

- ON: Plays all files randomly.
- OFF: Returns to normal playback.

#### Using the iPod Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the appropriate play mode.

#### **Browse Music**

- 1. Touch Browse Music.
- Touch the desired music.

#### **Tone Settings**

 Touch Tone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See "Tone Settings" under "Radio Controls" in Operation 

156.

#### **Auto Volume**

 Touch Auto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See "Auto Volume" under "Radio Controls" in Operation \$\phi\$ 156.

#### **USB Port (Picture System)**

The infotainment system can view picture files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

#### **Picture System Information**

- Supported file extensions: .jpg, .bmp, .png, .gif.
- Animated GIF files are not supported.
- Some files may not operate due to a different recording format or the condition of the file.

#### **Viewing Pictures**

- Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- Touch the screen to open to full screen. Touch the screen again to return to the previous screen.

If the compatible USB device is already connected:

- Press ⁴.
- Touch GALLERY.

3. Touch .

Some features are disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

#### Viewing a Slide Show

- 1. Touch from the picture screen.
- Touch the screen to cancel the slide show during the slide show playback.

### Viewing a Previous or Next Picture

Touch  $\leq$  or  $\geq$  from the picture screen.

#### Rotating a Picture

Touch **U** from the picture screen.

#### **Enlarging a Picture**

Touch Qx1 from the picture screen.

#### Using the USB Picture Menu

1. Touch MENU from the picture screen.

- 2. Touch the appropriate menu:
  - Slide Show Time: Allows selection of the slide show interval.
  - Clock, Temp. Display:
     Allows selection of On or
     Off to show the clock and
     temperature on the full
     screen.
  - Display Settings: Adjusts for Brightness and Contrast.
- 3. Touch to exit.

#### **USB Port (Movie System)**

The infotainment system can play movie files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

#### **Movie System Information**

- Available resolution: Lower than 1280 x 720 (W x H) pixels.
- Frame rate: Less than 30 fps.
- Playable movie file: mp4. The playable movie file may not be played according to the codec format.

- Playable codec format: H.264 codec.
- Playable Audio format: MP3, AC3, AAC, WMA.
- Max video bitrate:
  - mpeg-1: 8 Mbps
  - mpeg-4 (mpg4, mp42, mp43):4 Mbps
- Max audio bitrate:
  - mp3: 320 Kbps
  - wma: 320 Kbps
  - ac-3: 640 Kbps
  - aac: 449 Kbps
- Movie files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied may not be played.

#### Playing a Movie File

- Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- Touch the screen to open to full screen. Touch the screen again to return to the previous screen.

If the USB device is already connected:

- Touch GALLERY.
- Touch .

Movie is not available while driving.

#### **Pause**

- Touch II to pause.
- Touch ▶ to resume.

#### Changing to Next/Previous Movie

- Touch to change to the next file.
- Touch within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

#### Returning to the Beginning of the Current Movie

Touch ◀ after five seconds of the playback time.

#### **Scanning Forwards or Backwards**

Touch and hold ◀ or ▶ during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

#### Viewing Full Screen

Touch form the movie screen. Touch for again to return to the previous screen.

#### Using the USB Movie Menu

- Touch MENU from the movie screen.
- 2. Touch the appropriate menu:
  - Tone Settings: shows the sound setup. See "Tone Settings" in Operation
     ⇒ 156.
  - Auto Volume: Automatically adjusts the volume according to the speed of the vehicle. See "Auto Volume" in Operation
     156.

- Clock Temp. Display:
   Allows selection of On or Off to show the clock and temperature on the full screen.
- Display Settings: Adjusts for brightness and contrast.
- 3. Touch to exit.

#### **Auxiliary Devices**

### Using the Auxiliary Input Jack (if equipped)

Settings menus and functions may vary depending on vehicle options.

If equipped, the auxiliary input jack can be used to connect external audio devices such as an iPod<sup>®</sup>, iPhone<sup>®</sup>, MP3 player, CD player or other supported device for use as another source for audio listening. This input jack is not an audio output; do not plug headphones into the front auxiliary input jack.

If equipped with auxiliary input jack the infotainment system can play music connected by the auxiliary device.

#### **Playing Music**

To play music from the device, if the device is already connected:

- Press ⁴.
- 2. Touch AUDIO.
- Touch Source.
- Touch AUX.
- 5. Touch

#### **Phone**

#### **Bluetooth (Overview)**

If equipped with Bluetooth® capability, the system can interact with many Bluetooth phones, PDAs, or other devices to:

- Place and receive hands-free calls
- Transmit hands-free data.
- Play audio streaming files.

The device must be paired first. See "Pairing" later in this section.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone.
   Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries.
   If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.

 Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle.
 The system may not work with all cell phones. See "Pairing" later in this section.

### **⚠** Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

#### **⚠** Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system is used to control the system. The system can be used while in ignition position 1 or 2. See *Starting the Engine* ⇒ 192. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system.

There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.

Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, the device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.

# Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)

#### **Pairing**

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

#### **Pairing Information**

- A Bluetooth phone with MP3 capability cannot be paired to the vehicle as a phone and an MP3 player via USB port at the same time.
- Up to 10 cell phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired cell phone in the order that they were first paired.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. This is dependent on the type of phone paired. If the automatic download does not occur, proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

### Pairing a Phone – SSP and No Paired Device

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system and Simple Secure Pairing (SSP) is supported:

- Press ⚠.
- 2. Touch PHONE or press on the steering wheel.
- 3. Touch Search Device.
- Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
- Touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.

 When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone functions are displayed on the infotainment system.

### Pairing a Phone – SSP and Paired Device

When a paired device is on the infotainment system and SSP is supported:

- Press **☆**.
- 2. Touch Settings.
- 3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
- 4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.
- 5. Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
- Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.

- Touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.
- The connected phone is highlighted by .
- \*\rightarrow / \mathbf{k} \text{ indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.}
- \(\cup \) indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
- indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

### Pairing a Phone – No SSP and No Paired Device

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system and SSP is not supported:

- Press ⁴.
- 2. Touch PHONE or press on the steering wheel.
- 3. Touch Search Device.
- Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.

5. Input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone functions are displayed on the infotainment system.

If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

If a Bluetooth device was previously connected, the infotainment system executes the auto connection. However, if the Bluetooth setting on the Bluetooth device is turned off, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

### Pairing a Phone – No SSP and Paired Device

When a paired device is on the infotainment system and SSP is not supported:

- Press ⁴.
- 2. Touch Settings.

- 3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
- 4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.
- Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
- Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
- 7. Input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen.
- \*\( \) \( \) indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.

- indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
- indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

### Connecting a Paired Bluetooth Device

- 1. Press **⚠**.
- 2. Touch Settings.
- Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
- Touch the device to be connected.

### Checking the Bluetooth Connection

- 1. Press **⚠**.
- 2. Touch Settings.
- Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
- 4. The paired device will show highlighted.

#### Disconnecting a Bluetooth Device

- 1. Press **û**.
- 2. Touch Settings.

- Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
- Touch the name of the device to be disconnected.
- Touch Disconnect.

#### **Deleting a Bluetooth Device**

- 1. Press **⚠**.
- 2. Touch Settings.
- Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
- 4. Touch the device to delete.
- 5. Touch 🗓
- 6. Touch Delete.

#### Note

If the device to be deleted is connected, the disconnecting procedure needs to be performed previously to the deleting procedure.

#### **Bluetooth Music**

Before playing Bluetooth music, read the following information:

 A cell phone or Bluetooth device that supports Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP)

- versions over 1.2 must be registered and connected to the vehicle.
- From the cell phone or Bluetooth device, find the Bluetooth device type to set/connect the item as a stereo headset.
- will appear on the screen if the stereo headset is successfully connected.
- The sound played by the Bluetooth device is delivered through the infotainment system.
- Bluetooth music can be played only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth phone to the infotainment system.
- If the Bluetooth device is disconnected while playing phone music, the music is discontinued. The audio streaming function may not be supported in some Bluetooth phones. Only one function can be used at a time between the Bluetooth hands-free or Phone

music function. For example, if you convert to Bluetooth hands-free while playing Phone music, the music is discontinued. Playing music from the car is not possible when there are no music files stored in the cell phone.

#### Note

Verify the volume of your phone and its music player. If it is too low, you might not be able to hear the Bluetooth music.

#### Note

Depending on the phone device and/or player used, the music name might not be displayed while playing the music.

#### **Playing Bluetooth Music**

- 1. Press **௴**.
- 2. Touch AUDIO.
- 3. Touch Source.
- 4. Touch Bluetooth.

#### **Pause**

Touch II to pause.

Touch ▶ to resume.

#### **Playing the Next Song**

Touch ₩.

#### **Playing the Previous Song**

Touch ★ within approximately two seconds of playback time to play the previous song.

### Returning to the Beginning of the Current Song

Touch ◀ after approximately two seconds of playback time.

#### Search

Touch and hold **◄** or **▶** to rewind or fast forward.

#### **Playing Music Randomly**

This function may not be supported depending on the Bluetooth device.

Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.

Conditions that may occur when playing Bluetooth music:

- It takes time to transmit data from the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- If the cell phone or Bluetooth device is not in the waiting screen mode, it may not automatically play.
- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the Bluetooth device in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the Bluetooth device options, this order to play/stop may take time to activate.
- If the Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, then check to see if the Bluetooth device is in the waiting screen mode.
- Sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.
- The infotainment system outputs the audio from the cell phone or Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.

#### **Hands-Free Phone**

#### **General Information**

Vehicles with a Hands-Free Phone system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a hands-free profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice control are used to operate the system. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Hands-Free Phone system.

#### **Hands-Free Phone Controls**

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Hands-Free Phone system.

### Steering Wheel Controls (if equipped)

Steering wheel controls can be used to:

- Answer incoming calls.
- · Confirm system information.
- End a call.
- Decline a call.

- Cancel an operation.
- Make outgoing calls using the call list.

િલ્દ : Press to answer incoming calls.

: Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation.

### Making a Call by Entering a Phone Number

- Press 
   h, then touch PHONE on the screen.
- Press 6 on the steering wheel.

If a wrong number is entered, touch to delete the number one digit at a time, or touch and hold to delete all digits of the number.

### Switching a Call to the Cell Phone (Private Mode)

To switch the call from the cell phone to hands-free:

- 1. Touch 🗐 ».
- Touch (□) again to switch back to hands-free.

### Turning the Microphone On and Off

Touch / to turn the microphone on or off.

#### **Calling by Redial**

To call by using redial:

- Press 6 on the steering wheel controls to display the redial guidance screen.
- Touch \( \subseteq \) on the phone screen.

Redialling is not possible when there is no call history.

#### **Taking Calls**

When a phone call comes through the connected Bluetooth cell phone, the audio system will be muted or paused and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.

Press % on the steering wheel controls or touch \ on the screen.

To decline the call, press & on the steering wheel controls or touch on the screen.

#### **Using the Contacts Menu**

- 1. Touch Contacts on the phone screen.
- 2. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list.
- 3. Touch the phone book entry to call.
- If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

#### Note

When the Bluetooth of your cell phone and the radio are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. But the phone book may not be downloaded automatically according to the type of the phone. In this case, use the phone book on your phone. We recommend that you "Always" accept the Phone book connection request on the initial pairing of the phone.

If there is a connected Bluetooth device previously, the Infotainment system executes the auto connection. But if the Bluetooth

setting on your device is turned off, failure message is displayed on the Infotainment system.

#### **Searching for Contacts Entries**

- 1. Touch Contacts on the phone screen.
- 2. Touch  $\mathcal{P}$  on the contacts screen.
- Use the keypad to input the name to search. For details, see "Searching for a Name" following.
- 4. Touch the phone book entry to call.
- If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book will download. Some phones may not download automatically. If this happens, connect it again or proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

#### Searching for a Name

Select characters by using the keypad on the phone book screen. As characters are selected, the names that include those characters will display on the phone book screen. As more characters of the name are entered, the list of possible names is shortened.

To search for the name Alex:

- 1. Touch (abc) to select the first character.
- 2. Touch (jkl) to select the second character.
- 3. Touch (def) to select the third character.
- 4. Touch (wxy) to select the fourth character.

#### Making a Call from Call History

- 1. Touch Call History on the phone screen.
- 2. Touch one of the following for:
  - **C** All calls history.
  - Dialed calls.

- Missed calls.
- Received calls.
- 3. Select the contact entry to call.

### Making a Call with Speed Dial Numbers

Touch and hold the speed dial number using the keypad on the phone screen.

Only speed dial numbers already stored on the cell phone can be used for speed dial calls. Up to two-digit speed dial numbers are supported.

For two-digit speed dial numbers, press and hold the second digit to make a call to the speed dial number.

# Hands-Free Phone (Apple CarPlay and Android Auto)

#### Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

For more information see *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇒ 140

### **Settings**

#### **Radio Settings**

#### **Auto Volume**

This feature automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise.

The level of volume compensation can be selected, or the feature can be turned off.

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- Touch Radio.
- Select Auto Volume.
- Select the desired setting.
- 5. Touch to go back to the source screen.

#### **Tone Settings**

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Radio.
- 3. Touch Tone Settings.
- Select a Preset tone setting or a Custom tone setting and the Fader/Balance:

#### Preset

 Talk, Rock, Jazz, Pop, Country, Classical, or Custom.

#### Custom

 Bass, Midrange, or Treble: Touch – or +.

#### **Fader or Balance**

- Adjust the front/rear or left/ right speakers by dragging the dot in the vehicle image on the screen.
- 5. Touch to go back to the source screen.

#### **Setting the 12/24 Hour Format**

- Press ♠, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Time and Date, then select 12h or 24h format.
- 3. Touch **1**.

### Setting the Month and Day Format

1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.

- 2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Date Format
- Select DD/MM/YYYY (day/ month/year), MM/DD/YYYY (month/day/year), or YYYY/ MM/DD (year/month/day) format.
- 4. Touch **1**.

#### **Setting the Time and Date**

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Time or Set Date.
- 3. Touch + or to adjust the value.
- Touch ▼ or ▲ to adjust AM or PM for 12 hour format.
- 5. Touch to go back to the source screen.

#### **Manage Favorites**

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Radio.

Touch Manage Favourites, then select the number of favorite list on the radio screen.

#### **Audible Touch Feedback**

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Radio.
- 3. Turn on or off the Audible Touch Feedback.

#### **Text Scroll**

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- Touch Radio.
- 3. Turn on or off the Text Scroll.

#### **Maximum Startup Volume**

- Press 
   \$\frac{1}{4}\$, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Radio.
- 3. Touch Maximum Startup Volume, then set between 13 to 37.

#### Language

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Language.

3. Select language displayed on the Infotainment system.

#### Vehicle

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- Touch Vehicle.
- Touch the desired item:
  - Comfort and Convenience: Set Chime volume
  - Lighting: Set the desired Vehicle Locator Lights and Exit Lighting timing.
  - Power Door Locks: Turn Auto Door Lock on or off.
  - Remote Lock, Unlock, Start:
    - Remote Unlock Light Feedback: Select Off or Flash Lights.
    - Remote Lock Feedback: Select the desired option from the list.
    - Remote Door Unlock: Select All Doors or Driver Door

- Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors: Select
- Remote Window Operation: Select on or off.

#### **Bluetooth**

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Bluetooth.
- Touch the desired item:
  - Device Information: Check the device information.
  - Device management: Select the desired device and connect/disconnect or delete.
  - Change Pairing PIN: Manually change/set the PIN code.
  - Ringtones: Change the ringtone.
  - Sort Order: Change the sorting order of contacts. (First/Last or Last/First)

 Voice Mail Numbers: Change the voice mail number.

#### Apple CarPlay (If available)

- 1. Press ♣, then touch Settings.
- Touch Apple CarPlay.
- 3. Select on or off.

#### Android Auto (If available)

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Android Auto.
- Select on or off.

#### Note

Even though you set the Projection feature "Off", connecting the device and pressing the projection feature on home screen will display pop up message as following: "While active, New device will be displayed on this screen".

#### **USB Auto Launch**

- 1. Press **1**, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch USB Auto Launch.

- Select on or off.
  - On: If you connect the device through USB port, it will be launched automatically.
  - Off: If you connect the device through USB port, it will not be launched automatically.

#### Rear Camera (If equipped)

The Rear Camera menu is available in vehicles which has Rear Vision Camera (RVC) option. (Vehicles produced with Rear Vision Camera).

- 1. Press ♠, then touch Settings.
- 2. Touch Rear Camera.
  - Guidance Lines: Select the Guidance Lines feature to turn on or off
  - Rear Park Assist Symbols: Select the Rear Park Assist Symbols feature to turn on or off.

#### **Return to Factory Settings**

- Press 
   \$\frac{\dagger}{\text{\tilit}\\ \text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\texi\text{\text{\texit{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texit{\tex{
- 2. Touch Return to Factory Settings.
  - Restore Vehicle Settings: Restore all vehicle settings.
  - Clear All Private Data: Clear all private data from the system.
  - Restore Radio Settings: Restore all radio settings.

# Trademarks and License Agreements

# Trademarks and Licence Agreements



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> to play DivX<sup>®</sup> video, including premium content.

Covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.

DivX<sup>®</sup>, DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.



"Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPod and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

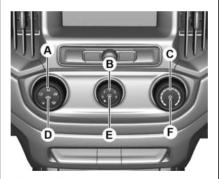
# **Climate Controls**

30
32
35
35
36
37
37
37

# Climate Control Systems

# **⚠** Warning

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in oxygen content and/or body temperature.



### Controls for:

- Air distribution (A)
- Fan speed (B)

- Temperature (C)
- Air recirculation (D)
- ▶ Heated rear window 🗯 (E)
- Air conditioning ☼ (F)

## Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning the knob (C).

Blue : Cold Red : Warm

#### **Air Distribution**

Select air outlet by turning the knob (A).

: To head area via adjustable air vents

: To head area and foot well

: To foot well

: To windscreen and foot well

🗰 : Demisting and defrosting

## Fan Speed

Adjust the air flow by turning the knob (B) to the desired speed.

#### **Heated Rear Window**

Operated by pressing the ∰ button (E), see *Heated Rear Window* ⇒ 29.

### Air Recirculation System

The air recirculation mode is operated with the button (D).

Use recirculation system whenever you need to cool down the air faster and for maximum cooling. Use it also whenever driving on dusty or smelly roads, to reduce particles and odors to penetrate the passenger compartment.

# **⚠** Warning

Driving in recirculation mode for a prolonged period of time can make you sleepy. Periodically turn to the outside air mode for fresh air.

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the (Continued)

## Warning (Continued)

air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates and may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

## Air conditioning

Press button 🌣 (F). Air conditioning is functional only when the engine and fan are running.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is a little above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the air conditioning system off to save fuel.

The air conditioning will not operate when the fan control knob (B) is in the 0 position.

Even though the air conditioning is turned on (F), the vehicle will produce warm air if the temperature knob is set in the red area.

To turn off the air conditioning system, press the \$\times\$ button (F) again or turn the fan knob (B) to 0.

If the air conditioning system (F) is on and you turn the fan knob (B) to 0, the air conditioning system remains on but inactive, since the fan is on 0. When you turn it back to motion, the air conditioning will work again.

# **⚠** Warning

It is recommended to service the climate control systems by a Holden Dealership Network or Authorized Repair Shop. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.

## **Normal Cooling**

 Operate the air conditioning system (F).

#### 182 Climate Controls

- Turn the temperature control knob (C) to the blue area for cooling.
- Turn the air distribution knob (A) to the desired position.
- Adjust the fan control knob (B) to the desired speed.

## **Maximum Cooling**

Briefly open the windows so that the hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on air conditioning \(\preceq \((\preceq\))\) (F).
- Press button (D) to activate air recirculation.
- Turn the air distribution knob (A) to position ...
- Set temperature control knob (C) to the coldest level.
- Set fan speed knob (B) to the highest level.
- Open all the vents.

## **Indication of Settings**

The selected functions are indicated by the LED of the activated button.

# Electronic Climate Control System

# **⚠** Warning

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in oxygen content and/or body temperature.



#### Controls for:

- Fan speed (A).
- Air conditioning (B).
- Air distribution (C).

- Demisting and defrosting (D).
- Temperature (E).
- Heated rear window (G).
- Air recirculation (H).

**AUTO**: Automatic mode, all settings except temperature are chosen automatically by the system (F).

\$ / ₺ : System ON/OFF (I).

## **Temperature**

Set temperature to the desired value by turning the knob (E).

Blue: Cold.

Red: Warm.

If the minimum temperature is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling.

## Heating

- Turn the temperature control knob (E) to the red area for heating.
- Select the air distribution (C) to the desired position.

 Turn the fan control knob (A) to the desired speed.

### **Maximum Heating**

Use the maximum heating mode for quick heating.

- Turn the temperature control knob (E) all the way to the red area for heating.
- Turn the fan control knob (A) to maximum speed.

#### Air Distribution

Press the respective button for desired adjustment, the setting of air distribution is indicated on the Info-Display.

: To windscreen and foot well.

: To foot well.

: To head area via adjustable air vents.

: To head area via adjustable air vents and foot well.

### Fan Speed

Adjust the air flow by turning the fan knob (A) to the desired speed.

# Demisting and Defrosting the Windows

- Press button (III) (D).
- Recirculation will switch to fresh air.
- Air distribution and fresh air are set automatically.

The air conditioning will be automatically switched on.

Switch on heated rear window (G).

### Air Recirculation System

The air recirculation mode is operated with the (H) button. When activated, external air inlet is closed and internal air is recirculated within the cabin.

To speed up the cool down and reach the desired temperature faster, if not in the **AUTO** mode, the air recirculation function is recommended.

# **⚠** Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

## Air conditioning

Activate or deactivate with the **A/C** (B) button. The air conditioning is only functional when the engine and Climate Control System are running.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

Even though the air conditioning is turned on, the vehicle will produce warm air if the temperature knob is set in the red area.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the cooling system off to save fuel

#### **Automatic Mode AUTO**

Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press AUTO button, the air conditioning is activated automatically.
- · Open all air vents.
- Set preselected temperature turning knob (E).

All air vents are actuated automatically in automatic mode. The air vents should therefore always be open.

The following functions can be adapted manually, however, the system will no longer function in automatic mode.

- Fan speed (A).
- Air conditioning (B).
- Air distribution (C).
- Demisting and defrosting (D).
- Air recirculation (H).
- Power ປ (I).

The preselected temperature is automatically regulated. In the automatic mode, the fan speed and air distribution automatically regulate the air flow.

The system can be manually adapted by the use of air distribution and fan speed controls.

Each change of settings is indicated in the Info-Display.

Activated functions are also indicated by the LED in the button in some cases.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Do not cover the sensor on the instrument panel for correct operation.

## **Manual Settings**

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and turning the rotary knobs. Changing a setting can deactivate the automatic mode.

To return to automatic mode, press **AUTO** button (F).

## **Rear Air Conditioning System**



The rear air conditioning system is operated with the **REAR A/C** button.

When activated, cold air will be sent to the air vents located on the roof of the vehicle and front air conditioning system will switch to manual mode.

# Rear Air Conditioning System

The rear air conditioning system operates in conjunction with the front passenger compartment air conditioning system.

#### **Rear Fan Switch**



1. Turn on the air conditioning system.

- 2. Press REAR A/C.
- Rotate the rear fan speed switch to the required speed.

Rotate anticlockwise to decrease air flow.

Rotate clockwise to increase air flow.

Air flows to the rear passenger compartment via the overhead air vents.

## **Air Vents**

# **Adjustable Air Vents**

At least one air vent must be open while cooling is on in order to prevent the evaporator from icing up due to lack of air movement.



Push the adjuster knob up to open and down to close the vent or to adjust the volume of air.



Direct the air flow by tilting and swivelling the adjuster knob.



# **⚠** Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

#### **Rear Air Vents**



Additional air conditioning is supplied to the rear passenger compartment via the overhead air vents.

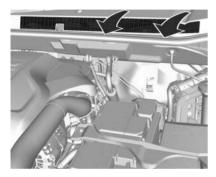
Pull the adjuster knob up to open and down to close the vent or to adjust the volume of air. Direct the air flow by swivelling and turning the adjuster knobs.

## **Fixed Air Vents**

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen, door windows and in the foot wells

## **Maintenance**

### Air Intake



Outside air is drawn into the vehicle through the opening between the bonnet and the windscreen.

Keep the area clear of debris.

# Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter removes contaminants such as pollen and dust from the air entering the vehicle.

Maintenance of the pollen filter is required. Refer to the Service/ Warranty Booklet.

# Air Conditioning Regular Operation

To ensure efficient performance, switch the air conditioning system on for a few minutes once a month, even in winter.

# Driving and Operating

Driving InformationDriving Environment189Steering189Off-Road Driving199Hill and Mountain Roads199	9
Starting and OperatingNew Vehicle Break-In19Ignition Positions19Starting the Engine19Starting the Diesel Engine19Parking19	1 2 2
Engine Exhaust	1
<b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> Diesel Particulate Filter 194	4
Automatic Transmission Automatic Transmission 196 Transmission Display	3
Shift Lever	

Interruption of Power Supply	197
<b>Drive Systems</b> Four-Wheel Drive	198
Brakes Brakes Antilock Brake	
System (ABS) Parking Brake Brake Assist Hill Start Assist (HSA)	203 203
Ride Control Systems Traction Control	
System (TCS) Electronic Stability	204
Control (ESC)	204
System (DCS)	205
Cruise Control Cruise Control	207
Object Detection Systems	
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System	209
Parking Assist	211
Alert (SBZA)	215
Rear Vision Camera (RVC)	216

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	18
Fuel2°Fuel2°Filling the Tank2°	
Trailer Towing Trailer Towing	
Conversions and Add-Ons Add-On Electrical Equipment	26

# **Driving Information**

# **Driving Environment**

### Before entering the vehicle

Check that windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

### Before driving off

- 1. Close and secure all doors.
- 2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
- 3. Adjust rear view mirrors.
- 4. Fasten seat belts.

#### **Brakes**

 Do not let the vehicle run down hills or coast with the engine off, as the power assistance does not operate.

- Ensure that there are no obstructions that could limit brake pedal use.
- Continuous or heavy use of brakes will shorten the life of the brake pads.
- See Antilock Brake System (ABS) ⇒ 202.

#### **Loose Articles**

Do not leave loose articles or luggage in the passenger compartment. Secure in the rear load area.

# **Marning**

Portable gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion.

As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders.

They must be restrained from rolling around and, when possible, placed in the cargo area of the vehicle.

(Continued)

## Warning (Continued)

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used.

Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

# Steering

## **Electric Power Steering**

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If the assistance is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort

See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If the power steering is used for an extended period of time, the assistance may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See specific vehicle steering messages under Steering System there is a problem.

## Off-Road Driving

Before driving off-road:

- Check spare tyre pressure. See
- Check fluids levels. See Engine

While driving off-road:

Be alert to unexpected restrictions.

- Be aware of uncommon noises from the tyres and the engine.
- Always drive at a speed at which you are able to maintain control of the vehicle.

#### Caution

When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can make you lose control of the steering. This could cause a collision. Therefore, when driving on-road and off-road, you and your passengers should wear seat belts.

## After driving off-road:

- Remove any debris from under the vehicle or bonnet. It may become a fire hazard.
- After driving through mud or sand, clean and check the brake linings.
- Check the body frame, steering, suspension, wheels, tyres, exhaust system, fuel lines and cooling system.

#### Note

Regular off-road driving requires more frequent maintenance.

## Water Crossing

Before crossing water:

- Switch off the air-conditioning.
- Do not attempt to drive through water more than 600 mm deep.
- Never drive into fast-running water. The force of the water can easily move the vehicle sideways, possibly into deeper water.
- Drive very slowly through deep water. Driving too fast may cause water to enter the engine and cause major damage.
- Immediately after driving through deep water, drive slowly and check the brake pedal force. If the brakes are wet, press firmly several times to dry them out auickly.
- If the vehicle is stationary in deep water for an extended time, water may have entered the engine, transmission,

differentials and wheel bearings. Contact a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

### **Hill and Mountain Roads**

If the vehicle is driven frequently over hilly terrain, it must be maintained in good condition. The fluids, tyres and brake pads must be checked according to the maintenance schedule shown in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

On a downhill road, avoid unnecessary use of the brakes. The vehicle speed can be slowed by shifting down a gear.

When driving downhill, always keep the engine running and a gear engaged. Do not drive with the engine turned off or by shifting into neutral gear.

# Starting and Operating

### **New Vehicle Break-In**

Use the following precautions to improve performance:

- Do not make full throttle starts.
- Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies. This will allow your brakes to bed in properly.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies to avoid premature wear and the need for early replacement of brakes.
- Avoid heavy acceleration and prolonged high-speed driving to avoid damage to the engine and to conserve fuel.
- Do not tow any other vehicle.

# **Ignition Positions**



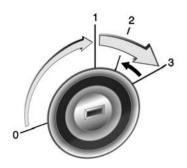
- 0: Ignition off (LOCK)
- 1: Ignition off (ACC), steering wheel lock released
- 2: Ignition on (ON), for diesel engine: preheating
- 3: Starting (START)

# **⚠** Danger

Do not leave the key in position 1 or 2 for extended periods while the engine is not running. This will discharge the battery.

Do not turn the key to position 0 while driving. Driver could lose control of vehicle and brake power assistance would be cancelled, causing vehicle damage and risks of accident.

# **Starting the Engine**



Apply the park brake.

Turn the key to position 1 while moving the steering wheel slightly to release the lock.

Manual transmission: Push the clutch pedal to the floor and move the selector lever to the neutral position.

Automatic transmission: Move the selector lever to  ${\bf P}$  or  ${\bf N}$ .

Do not accelerate.

- Turn the ignition key to position
   until ₩ extinguishes.
- 4. Turn the key to position 3 and release when the engine is running.

# Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The power outlets may be used after the engine is turned off.

#### Note

The power outlets will continue to operate for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened.

# Starting the Diesel Engine

Observe the following precautions to ensure maximum turbocharger service life.

- After starting the engine, let it idle for approximately 1 to 2 minutes (avoid acceleration or driving the vehicle).
- Do not stop the engine immediately after high-load driving (such as high-speed driving or driving up steep gradients). Let the engine idle for approximately 1 to 2 minutes to cool it down.
- After changing the engine oil and oil filter, start the engine and let it idle for about 1 to 2 minutes (avoid acceleration or driving the vehicle).
- Operate the engine above idle speed only after normal engine oil pressure has been established. Forcing the turbocharger to operate before

the bearings are adequately lubricated creates unnecessary friction

- Use only the specified engine oil and observe the inspection and replacement intervals.
- At low outside temperatures or when the vehicle has not been used for a long period, normal engine oil pressure and flow is affected.

Under these conditions, the engine should be started and allowed to idle for a few minutes before operating at higher rpms.

## **Parking**

- Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button.
- 2. Automatic transmission: Select position **P**.

Manual transmission: If facing uphill or on flat ground, select 1st gear. If facing downhill, select reverse gear.

On an uphill gradient turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

On a downhill gradient turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Shut all windows.
- Turn the ignition off to lock the steering wheel.
- 5. Remove the key.
- 6. Press on the key to lock all doors. See *Keys* 

  17.

# **⚠** Warning

To avoid the possibility of injury, always apply the parking brake firmly before exiting the vehicle.

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate this vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with the hot exhaust system.

(Continued)

## Warning (Continued)

Never leave the engine running in an area such as a closed garage or underground car park.

# **Engine Exhaust**

# **⚠** Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault repaired by a Holden Dealer.

# Diesel Particulate Filter

The vehicle has a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) as part of the exhaust system to reduce vehicle emissions.

The diesel particulate filter system collects particulates from the exhaust gases to minimise discharge of soot to the atmosphere.

To prevent clogging of the filter, the soot particles are burnt off at regular intervals through a self cleaning process where additional fuel is injected into the engine cylinders to increase the particulate filter temperature to approximately 600°C.

Several factors including fuel consumed, hours of engine operation, and distance travelled are monitored by the Engine Control Module (ECM). The self-cleaning occurs approximately once per tank of fuel.

This allows deposited soot to be oxidised or burnt off and converted to carbon dioxide (CO2).

This process usually takes between 10 and 15 minutes but may take up to 30 minutes depending on driving conditions.

Increased engine speed at idle and emissions of odours and smoke are considered to be normal conditions during the self cleaning process. Fuel consumption may also be higher during this period.

Under certain driving conditions, such as stop-start traffic, the filter cannot clean itself. A message is displayed when the DPF is dirty and needs to perform a self cleaning. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Messages* 

⇔ 83.

For the filter to clean itself, the vehicle must be continuously driven until the message extinguishes. This can take up to 30 minutes.

The message extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete. Turning the engine off while the message is displayed will prevent the cleaning process from completing. This will result in increased fuel consumption and a reduction in engine oil life.

You will also notice a change in the exhaust sound and engine idle speed. This is normal.

If you continue to drive with the DPF warning message displayed and the exhaust filter is not cleaned as required, the SVS (Service Vehicle Soon) message will be displayed, since the self-cleaning process is not feasible and a dealer service is necessary.

If the diesel particulate filter is not cleaned soon, the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) will illuminate, an 'Engine Power is Reduced' message will be displayed and a dealer service will be necessary. See Diesel Particulate Filter Messages ⇔ 83, Vehicle Messages ⇔ 81, Engine Power Messages ⇔ 83, Malfunction Indicator Lamp ⇔ 75.

#### Caution

Permanent damage can occur to the DPF or related components if the required Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (15 ppm sulfur maximum) or the recommended engine oil is not used. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

# **Marning**

During DPF self cleaning or during extended idling, the exhaust system and exhaust gases are very hot. Combustible material could contact hot exhaust components under the vehicle and ignite. You or others could be burnt. Do not park or idle for an extended period of time near or over paper, leaves, dry grass, or other combustible materials. Keep the exhaust area clear of material that could ignite or burn.

#### Caution

Extended idle should be avoided as the DPF system will not self clean. During extended idle operation, monitor the DIC for messages and take appropriate action. Continued idling with the warning message displayed may cause irreversible damage to the DPF.

# Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits manual gear shifting (manual mode) or automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) of the gears.

# **Transmission Display**



The mode or selected gear is shown in the central display of the instrument panel.

### **Shift Lever**



**P**: (park) In park position, the wheels are locked. Select **P** only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied.

**R**: (reverse) Place in reverse only when the vehicle is stationary.

N: (neutral)

**D**: (drive) Used for general driving. Allows the transmission to be shifted into any of the six forward gears.

+-: (manual) See *Manual Mode* ⇒ 197.

#### Note

- The selector lever is locked in position P. To move, switch the ignition on, apply the brake pedal and push the release button.
- To engage **P** or **R**, push the release button.
- To start the engine, press the brake pedal while in either P or N.
- Do not accelerate while engaging a gear.
- Never press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.
- When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

## **Engine Braking**

For engine braking, select a lower gear when driving downhill.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not shift down by two or more gear positions at one time.

## **Grade Braking**

Grade braking assists in maintaining desired vehicle speeds when driving on downhill gradients by using the engine and transmission to slow the vehicle.

The first time the feature activates for each ignition cycle, a DIC message will be displayed. See *Transmission Messages* ⇒ 86.

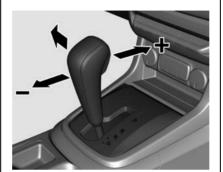
### **Parking**

- 1. Press the brake pedal.
- 2. Select position P.
- Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button.
- 4. Remove the ignition key.

#### Note

The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

### **Manual Mode**



Move the selector lever out of position **D** towards the left and then forwards or backwards as desired.

- +: Upshift
- -: Downshift

If a higher gear is selected when the vehicle speed is too low or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed.

If the engine speed is too low, the transmission automatically shifts to a lower gear.

No automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine speed.

# Electronic Driving Programs

#### Kickdown

If the accelerator pedal is pressed to the floor while in automatic mode, the transmission shifts to a lower gear, depending on the engine speed.

#### **Fault**

In the event of a fault, I illuminates. The transmission no longer shifts automatically or manually because it is locked in a certain gear.

Contact a Holden Dealer.

# Interruption of Power Supply

If the power supply is interrupted, the selector lever cannot be moved out of position **P** and the ignition key cannot be removed.

If the battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch/lock.

#### Release Selector Lever

To shift out of P:

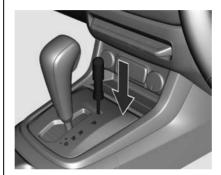
1. Apply the brake pedal.



2. Open the cover.

#### Note

Use a small screwdriver to prise the cover off at both ends.



- Insert a screwdriver into the slot until the selector lever is unlocked.
- Move the selector lever to position N.
- Remove the screwdriver.
- Close the cover.
- Have the vehicle repaired by a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

# **Drive Systems**

#### **Four-Wheel Drive**

If the vehicle has four-wheel drive, you can send the engine driving power to all four wheels for extra traction.

To get the best performance out of four-wheel drive, you must be familiar with its operation. You should use two-wheel drive high for most normal driving conditions.

#### Note

Driving on clean, dry pavement in four-wheel drive for an extended period of time can cause premature wear on the vehicle drivetrain.

#### Note

Do not engage four-wheel drive if wheels of different sizes are fitted as damage to the vehicle can result. The repair would not be covered by the warranty.

#### Note

An incorrect usage of the four-wheel drive may damage the system. Use four-wheel drive only on tracks with low adherence, dirt roads, grass, pasture, mud, sand, whenever additional traction is required.

The transfer case shift control switch is located to the side of the parking brake handle on the console between the front seats.

Indicator lights on the shift control switch indicate which setting you are in. The indicator lights will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition and the selected setting will remain on. If the lights do not come on, you should take the vehicle in for service. An indicator light will flash while shifting. It will stay on when the shift is completed. If the transfer case does not shift, it will return to the last chosen setting.

When the ignition key is in the position **2**, the transfer case shift control module monitors the transfer case shift control switch to determine if the driver desires a new setting. At a turn of the transfer case shift control switch, the lamp of the new desired setting will begin to flash to inform the driver that the transfer case shift control module

has received the request for a new setting. The lamp continues to flash until all shifting criteria has been met and the new setting has been reached or has been engaged. Once the new setting is fully active, the switch indicator lamp for the new setting will remain on constantly.



Rotate the shift control switch to shift into and out of four-wheel drive. You can choose from the following:

2<sup>†</sup> (Two-Wheel High): This setting is for driving in most street and highway situations. The front axle is not engaged in two-wheel drive.

**N** (Neutral): Shift the vehicle transfer case to N (Neutral) only when towing the vehicle.

# ⚠ Warning

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking* \$\phi\$ 193

**4**<sup>†</sup> (Four-Wheel High): This setting engages the front axle to help drive the vehicle. Use four-wheel high when you need extra traction, such as on snowy or icy roads, or in most offroad situations.

4 (Four-Wheel Low): This setting also engages the front axle to give you extra traction. It sends the maximum power to all four wheels.

You might choose four-wheel low if you were driving off-road in sand, mud, or deep snow and while

climbing or descending steep hills. Shifting into four-wheel low will turn off engine traction control and stability control, see *Traction Control System (TCS)*  $\Rightarrow$  204.

#### Note

Continuous driving on  $4^{\uparrow}$  or  $4^{\downarrow}$  on high adherence tracks (dry compacted dirt or paved roads), mainly on turns or sudden manoeuvres, is not recommended, as it will cause premature wear of drivetrain components as well increasing fuel consumption. It is always recommended to disable  $4^{\uparrow}$  or  $4^{\downarrow}$  after its intended usage.

# Shifting from Two-Wheel High to Four-Wheel High (2<sup>†</sup> to 4<sup>†</sup>)

Rotate the shift control switch from two-wheel high **2** <sup>↑</sup> to the four-wheel high **4** <sup>↑</sup> setting. This can be done at any speed below 120 km/h.

# Shifting from Four-Wheel High to Two-Wheel High (4<sup>1</sup> to 2<sup>1</sup>)

Rotate the shift control switch to the two-wheel high 2 ↑ position. This can be done at any speed. It is normal to hear and feel the vehicle transfer case shift out of four-wheel high 4 ↑.

# Shifting from Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High to Four-Wheel Low (2<sup>†</sup> or 4<sup>†</sup> to 4<sup>‡</sup>)

To shift from Two-Wheel High 2 ↑ or four-wheel high 4 ↑ to four-wheel low 4 ↓, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h with the transmission in N (Neutral). The preferred method for shifting into four-wheel low 4 ↓ is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h. Rotate the shift control switch to the four-wheel low 4 ↓ setting. You must wait for the four-wheel low 4 ↓ indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal. If four-wheel low

setting is selected when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h, the four-wheel low indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift and the light will go back to the original setting.

## Shifting from Four-Wheel Low to Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High (4↓ to 2↑ or 4↑)

To shift from four-wheel low 4 \( \frac{1}{2} \) to two-wheel high 2 1 or four-wheel high 4 1, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h with the transmission in N (Neutral). The preferred method for shifting out of four-wheel low 4 \( \psi \) is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h. Rotate the shift control switch to the two-wheel high 2 1 or four-wheel high 4 1 position. You must wait for the two-wheel high or four-wheel high indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal. If two-wheel high or four-wheel high setting is selected when the vehicle is in gear

and/or moving faster than 5 km/h, the two-wheel high or four-wheel high indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift and the light will go back to the original setting.

# Shifting to Neutral (2<sup>↑</sup>, 4<sup>↑</sup> or 4<sup>↓</sup> to Neutral)

Use N (Neutral) when you plan to tow the vehicle. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇒ 267 for towing instructions. The vehicle must be stopped. To shift the transfer case into N (Neutral) with the key on position **ON**, do the following:

- 1. Set the parking brake.
- 2. Press the brake pedal and shift the transmission in N (Neutral).
- 3. Shift the transfer case to two-wheel high **2** ↑.
- Rotate the shift control switch clockwise past four-wheel low
   to N (Neutral). Hold the switch in the N (Neutral) setting for at least 20 seconds or wait until the red Neutral indicator light stops flashing and stays

on. The N (Neutral) red indicator light will come on when the transfer case shift to N (Neutral) is complete.

#### Note

Upon releasing the shift control switch from N (Neutral) setting, the switch will rotate to the four-wheel low ( $4 \downarrow$ ) setting. The transfer case will remain in N with red N (Neutral) indicator light illuminated until a new setting is selected.

- 5. Press and hold the brake pedal and shift the transmission to R (Reverse) for 1 second, then shift the transmission to D (Drive) for 1 second to insure the transfer case is in N (Neutral). If the transfer case is not in N (Neutral), repeat this procedure starting at Step 3.
- 6. Place the transmission selector lever in P (Park).
- 7. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

This N (Neutral) setting is a four-wheel drive neutral, meaning the front and rear outputs of the transfer case are disengaged as in

four-wheel high. With a disengaged transfer, there is no power flow the either axle, thus allowing towing without the driveline binding.

## **Shifting Out of Neutral**

After towing the vehicle, you will have to shift out of N (Neutral) in order to drive. To shift out of N (Neutral), do the following:

- 1. Set the parking brake and apply the brake pedal;
- 2. Shift the transmission to N (Neutral) position;
- Start the vehicle or keep the engine off and turn the key to the ACC/ACCESSORY position;
- Rotate the transfer case shift control switch from the four-wheel low 4 ↓ setting to the desired setting;
- 5. Release the parking brake.

## **Brakes**

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If one brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still brake using the other brake circuit. However, the braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is pressed firmly.

Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Contact a Holden Dealer.

When the engine is not running, such as when the vehicle is being towed and the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice, braking requires greater force.

### Caution

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will accelerate wear of the brake components and cause the brakes to become overheated.

# Antilock Brake System (ABS)

#### ABS:

- Continuously monitors the vehicle's braking system, preventing the wheels from locking.
- Allows maximum braking effort while full steering control is retained, even in the event of panic braking.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

#### Operation

ABS operation is noticeable by pulsing of the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

The initial self-check may also be audible.

Keep the brake pedal fully pressed throughout the braking process, without pumping it. Pumping the brake pedal can reduce brake efficiency.

If the vehicle is travelling above 50 km/h and ABS braking occurs, the centrally mounted rear high-level brake lamp will flash.

# **⚠** Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

(Continued)

## Warning (Continued)

If the warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

**Note:** The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

## **Parking Brake**

Applying the parking brake:

 Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button and apply as firmly as possible when on an uphill or downhill gradient. Releasing the parking brake:

- 1. Pull the lever slightly upwards.
- Press the release button and lower the lever all the way down.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, press the foot brake at the same time.

# **⚠** Warning

Never drive the vehicle with the parking brake applied.

## **Brake Assist**

If the brake pedal is pressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied (full braking).

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal for as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when the brake pedal is released.

# Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The HSA system assists in preventing rollback when driving off, while on an incline.

- 1. Release the brake pedal.
- 2. Press the accelerator pedal.

The brakes remain on for approximately 2 seconds.

# **Ride Control Systems**

# Traction Control System (TCS)

TCS improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the driving wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driving wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

When four-wheel drive is active, TCS is operational on the rear wheels only.

# **Marning**

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The

(Continued)

## Warning (Continued)

vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

## Operation

The  $^{2}$  switch is located in front of the selector lever.



In certain circumstances, it may be helpful to deactivate the TCS.

- Deactivate by pressing for approximately 2 seconds.
  - Traction Control Off is displayed on the DIC.
- TCS is reactivated by pressing again, for approximately seconds.

Traction Control On is displayed on the DIC.

- When active \$\bar{z}\$ flashes.
- TCS is also reactivated the next time the ignition is turned on.

# Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

#### ESC:

- Improves driving stability in any driving situation.
- Assists in maintaining vehicle stability when the vehicle's grip level is exceeded such as a sudden lane change, slippery or unexpected road conditions.

 Alters engine power and/or braking on specific wheels, improving the vehicle's steering control and power delivery, on wet or slippery roads, particularly on snow and ice.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Adapt speed to the road conditions.

#### Operation

The \$\frac{1}{4}\$ switch is located in front of the selector lever.



In certain circumstances, it may be helpful to deactivate ESC.

- Deactivate by pressing \$\frac{1}{4}\$ for approximately 7 seconds.
  - ઢ illuminates and ESC Off is displayed on the DIC.
- ESC is reactivated by pressing again for approximately 2 seconds.

Both TCS and ESC are reactivated and  $^{\cite{A}}_{\cite{A}}$  extinguishes.

- ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is turned on.

# Descent Control System (DCS)

- The DCS allows the vehicle to travel on a steep decline at speeds between approximately 7 km/h and 30 km/h (manual transmission) or 4 km/h and 30 km/h (automatic transmission) without pressing the brake pedal.
- When the system is activated and while the vehicle is moving at speeds between approximately 7 km/h and 30 km/h (manual transmission) or 4 km/h and 30 km/h (automatic transmission), it will maintain the desired descent speed when the vehicle is on a steep slope.
- The desired descent speed within the active range can be varied by using the accelerator or brake pedals to set the speed.

 Noise or vibration from the brake system may be noticeable when the system is in operation.

#### Caution

Use only when descending steep gradients while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces.
Unnecessary usage of the DCS, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.

### **Activation**



While travelling at speeds below 50 km/h:

• Press 2.

alluminates green on the instrument panel.

During operation, 2 flashes.

#### Note

 Pressing the accelerator or brake pedals while DCS is activated, will adjust the desired descent speed.

If pressed, DCS operation will stop until the accelerator or brake pedals are released.

a stops flashing.

 If the DCS is activated and the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h,
 extinguishes and the system remains in standby mode.

When the vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h, alluminates and DCS is activated.

- When in standby mode and the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h, DCS deactivates.
- The message Reduce Speed for Hill Descent Control may display when DCS is activated and vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.

#### Deactivation

While travelling at speeds below 50 km/h:

• Press ื

a extinguishes.

### **System Protection**

When operated continuously for prolonged periods of time, temperatures may increase within the brake system:

- DCS may enter a protection mode, gradually releasing the brakes, and temporarily disabling DCS.
- \( \begin{align\*} \tilde{\alpha} \) will extinguish.
- Traction Control Off may display on the DIC.

- All other braking functions will continue to operate normally.
- Once the brakes are at normal temperatures, press at speeds below 50 km/h to reactivate the DCS.

## **Cruise Control**



#### The cruise control:

- Maintains the vehicle's speed without pressure on the accelerator pedal.
- Will only operate at speeds above approximately 20 km/h.
- Controls are located on the steering wheel.
- For safety reasons, cruise control cannot be activated until the foot brake has been operated once.

# **⚠** Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds. A consistent speed isn't practical in heavy, varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. Therefore the vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills, the vehicle may lose speed. You may need to switch off cruise control and use the accelerator pedal.

## **Setting Cruise Control**

- Press ON OFF.
  - illuminates white.
- 2. Accelerate to the desired speed (above 20 km/h).
- 3. Push the switch down to SET/-.
  - illuminates green.

4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

## **Increasing Set Speed**

 Push the switch up to RES/+ and hold it or briefly push to RES/+ repeatedly.

The vehicle will accelerate.

 Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by pushing the switch down to SET/-.

#### Note

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

## **Decreasing Set Speed**

 Push the switch down to SET/and hold it or briefly push to SET/- repeatedly.

The vehicle will decelerate.

Release the switch at the desired speed.

#### **Deactivation**

- Press CANCEL.
  - illuminates white.

Alternatively, do one of the following:

- Reduce vehicle speed below approximately 20 km/h.
- Press the brake pedal.
- The TCS or the ESC operates.

## **Resume Stored Speed**

When the cruise control is on and speed is above 20 km/h:

- Push the lever up to RES/+.
   The most recently set speed will
  - The most recently set speed will automatically resume.
  - illuminates green.

## **Switching Off**

- Press ON OFF.
  - (S) extinguishes.

The stored speed is deleted.

#### Note

Switching the ignition off also deletes the stored speed.

# Object Detection Systems

# Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a red flashing alert and rapidly beeps. FCA also illuminates an amber visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m and operates at speeds above 40 km/h.

# **⚠** Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a (Continued)

## Warning (Continued)

warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

FCA can be disabled with the FCA steering wheel control.

## **Detecting the Vehicle Ahead**



FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected, the vehicle ahead indicator will display green.

#### Note

Vehicles may not be detected on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

# **Marning**

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

# **Marning**

Poor illumination conditions will prejudice the camera identification of vehicles ahead.

Motorcycles may not be detected by the camera when its is dark enough outside.

#### **Collision Alert**

Cluster Alert



Reflected LED Alert



When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash and sound several high-pitched beeps from the front. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Collision Alert occurs.

Press on the steering wheel to adjust the alert sensitivity. Each press cycles the alert sensitivity through three settings: Far, Medium, Near or Off.

When pressed, the current alert sensitivity setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster. The alert sensitivity setting is maintained until it is changed.

#### Note

Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following alert sensitivity. The range of selectable alert sensitivity may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

## **Tailgating Alert**



The amber Collision Alert display will stay continuously illuminated when following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

## **Selecting the Alert Timing**



The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the FCA timing to far, medium, near,

or off. The first button press shows the current control setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

## **Unnecessary Alerts**

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

## Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

# **Parking Assist**



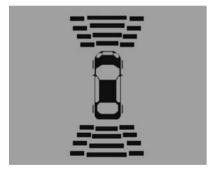


# **⚠** Warning

The parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and the obstacles and giving acoustic signals. It is the driver, however, who bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuver.

With Rear Parking Assist (RPA), and if equipped with Front Parking Assist (FPA), as the vehicle moves at speeds of less than 11 km/h the sensors on the bumpers may detect objects up to 2.3 m behind and 1.0 m in front of the vehicle within a

zone 25 cm high off the ground and below bumper level. These detection distances may be shorter during warmer or humid weather. Blocked sensors will not detect objects and can also cause false detections. Keep the sensors clean of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush; and clean sensors after a car wash in freezing temperatures. Beeps for FPA are higher pitched than for RPA



The instrument cluster may have a parking assist display with bars that show "distance to object" and object

location information for the Parking Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up.

For vehicles with rear vision camera, the information display will show the symbol  $\triangle$ . As the object gets closer, the symbol will get bigger and its colour changes from amber to red.

The system consists of four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper and four ultrasonic parking sensors in the front bumper (if equipped).

# **⚠** Danger

The driver's complete attention is required when driving.

The Parking Assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 11 km/h. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle

(Continued)

## **Danger (Continued)**

damage, even with parking assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or backing.

#### Note

Attached parts in the detection area cause system malfunction.

# **Marning**

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

#### Caution

Sensitivity of the sensor could be reduced caused by external influences, e.g. layers on the (Continued)

### Caution (Continued)

sensor surface (ice, snow, mud, soiling, multiple varnishing/painting, etc.).

The sensor could detect a non-existing object (echo disturbance) caused by either external acoustical disturbances, such as another park assist system, or external mechanic disturbances such as a car wash, rain, extreme wind conditions, hail. etc.

Performance of the parking assist system could be reduced due to the change of the sensor position by external changes to the vehicle, e.g. lowering of the shock absorber over lifetime due to: temperature changes, changing of tyres, loading of the vehicle, lowering/tuning of the vehicle etc.

Particular conditions apply for high vehicles (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, transporters). (Continued)

### Caution (Continued)

Object identification in the upper part of the vehicle can not be guaranteed.

### **Activation**

When reverse gear is engaged, the front and rear systems are activated automatically.

An obstacle is indicated by acoustic warnings. The interval between the warnings becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm, the acoustic warning sounds continuously.

#### Note

The acoustic warning ceases if the vehicle remains stationary for 3 seconds or more (except in continuous sound)

#### Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when:

- The vehicle is driven above 11 km/h — front and rear parking assist is deactivated.
- The reverse gear is disengaged

   rear parking assist is
   deactivated
- A fault in the system occurs.

#### Note

The front parking assist will automatically reactivate until vehicle speed exceeds 25 km/h.

The system can be manually turned off by pressing the P<sup>m</sup> button of the instrument panel while Parking Assist is on.

Pressing the P// button while Parking Assist is off will allow the system to turn on when activation parameters are met.

#### Fault

To test a possible fault:

- Park the vehicle on an area with no obstacles in a range of 2 meters of the rear bumper.
- 2. Apply the parking brake firmly.

- 3. Turn the ignition key to ON.
- 4. Engage reverse.
- 5. When the reverse gear is engaged:
  - If there is no acoustic signal: Check the power supply of the kit module, by verifying that the reverse lights are working.
  - If just one acoustic signal is given followed shortly after by an almost continuous acoustic signal, it indicates a fault sign: Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.
  - If one acoustic signal is given followed by separate acoustic signals like when the vehicle gets closer to an object: Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.
  - If two acoustic signals are given:

Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.

## Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

If equipped, RCTA displays a red warning triangle with a left or right pointing arrow on the RVC screen to warn of traffic coming from the left or right. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m from the left or right side of the vehicle. When an object is detected, three beeps sound from the left or right.

The system works in reverse gear.

The system range varies accordingly to the type of parking space vacancy, e.g. 45°.

Use caution while backing up when towing a trailer, as the RCTA detection zones that extend out from the back of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

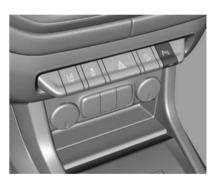
#### Note

RCTA may not operate when the RCTA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms.

# **⚠** Danger

RCTA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all.

## Turning the Features On or Off



The P<sup>M</sup> button of the instrument panel is used to turn on or off the Front and Rear Parking Assist. The indicator LED next to the button comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

Turn off parking assist when towing a trailer.

# Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas. The SBZA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal in corresponding side is on.

## **⚠** Danger

The driver's complete attention is required when driving.

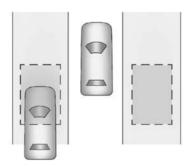
SBZA does not alert the driver to vehicles rapidly approaching outside of the side blind zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing

(Continued)

### Danger (Continued)

lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

#### **SBZA Detection Zones**

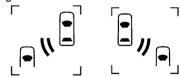


The SBZA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or approximately 3.5 m. The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m and 2 m off the

ground. This zone starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m.

#### **How the System Works**

The SBZA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a moving vehicle in the next lane over that is in the side blind zone. This indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the SBZA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.



Left Side Mirror Right Side Mirror Display Display

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror SBZA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light

up if a moving vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated in the same direction of a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

SBZA can be disabled through vehicle settings. See "Collision Detection Systems" under "Vehicle" in the Infotainment System. If SBZA is disabled by the driver, the SBZA mirror displays will not light up.

## When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

SBZA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, for a stopped vehicle, or when towing a trailer. The SBZA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. SBZA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the side blind zone, especially in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not operate when the SBZA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms.

If the SBZA displays do not light up when vehicles are in the blind zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When SBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Side Blind Zone Alert On option will not be available on the personalisation menu.

# Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The vehicle may have a RVC.

## ⚠ Warning

The driver's complete attention is required when driving.

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that can not be sensed by the rear vision camera.

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle, always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the rear vision camera, the camera may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

#### **Camera Location**



The camera is located on the rear tailgate.

The RVC cannot display objects:

- Close to the corners of the bumper
- Forward of the camera
- Higher than the camera

#### **RVC Display**

The camera image appears on the infotainment system display when reverse gear is selected.

The area directly behind the vehicle is displayed in real time.

#### Note

- The distance of objects seen on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.
- Objects of different heights will appear to be different distances from the vehicle.
- The display brightness automatically adjusts to suit ambient lighting conditions.

 Guidelines to assist reversing can be displayed. See "Infotainment System" for more information.

#### Operating the RVC

To activate:

- Turn the ignition key to ON.
- Select reverse gear.
   The camera and display automatically activates.

#### Note

When the selector lever is moved to another position, the RVC deactivates.

#### Cleaning

The lens requires regular cleaning to ensure optimum performance.

Use only a soft cloth, mild soap and water.

## **⚠** Danger

Do not use abrasive cleaners or scouring pads as they could scratch the lens, impairing the systems performance.

# Lane Departure Warning (LDW)



If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide an alert if the vehicle is crossing a lane without using a turn signal in that

direction. LDW uses a camera to detect the lane markings at speeds of 60 km/h or greater.

## ⚠ Warning

The LDW system does not steer the vehicle. The LDW system may not:

- Provide enough time to avoid a crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windshield or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice; if they are not in proper condition; or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If LDW only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only warn you when

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

departing the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windshield, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LDW in bad weather conditions.

#### **How the System Works**

The LDW camera is on the windshield ahead of the rearview mirror



When LDW is on, is green if LDW is available to warn of a lane departure. If the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction, is changes to amber and flashes. Additionally, there will be three beeps on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

## When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

The system may not detect lanes as well when there are:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.

If the LDW system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windshield may help.

LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn LDW off if these conditions continue.

#### Intelligent Alert Suppression

The system alerts may be suppressed in the following conditions:

- Braking (obstacle avoidance).
- Acceleration (passing another vehicle).
- Constant curves with great steering wheel interaction (driving downhill).
- Turn signal activated.

#### Fuel

## **⚠** Danger

#### EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.

(Continued)

#### **Danger (Continued)**

 Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Turn the fan on using any setting that brings outside air into the vehicle. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

## **⚠** Danger

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

(Continued)

### Danger (Continued)

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

## **⚠** Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

Under no circumstances should you use diesel fuel containing ethanol.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation.

These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to your vehicle and personal injury.

## **Fuel Types**

Diesel engines must only be run using commercially available diesel fuel that meets the requirements of Euro standard EN590.

The use of biodiesel containing up to 5 % fatty acid methyl ester ("FAME") also known as "B5" is also permitted provided that the FAME meets Euro Standard EN14214, and the resultant B5 blend meets Euro Standard EN590.

Do not use marine diesel oils or heating oils.

The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent. When temperatures are low, use diesel fuel with guaranteed winter properties.

#### Caution

Use only biodiesel blends containing up to a maximum of 5 % FAME that meets Euro standard EN590.

Purchasing fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel with more than 5 % FAME or fuel that has abnormal fuel properties.

The use of any other biodiesel that does not have the certification referred to above, or has a FAME content exceeding 5 %, may cause serious damage to your vehicle (including engine failure).

Damage attributable to the use of non-certified biodiesel is not covered by your New Vehicle

(Continued)

#### Caution (Continued)

Voluntary Warranty. In no event will GM Holden be responsible or bear any liability for any damage or loss that may arise in connection with the use of any fuel that does not meet this specification.

## Filling the Tank

Always fill the fuel tank at the intermediate or fast fill rate. Do not add any more fuel after the fuel filler first clicks off or fuel blows back. This allows room for the fuel to expand inside the tank.

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately from the vehicle. Replace the fuel cap and close the fuel opening then spray or splash with water.

#### **Tank Capacity**

#### **Fuel Filler Door**



1. Pull the release lever.



The fuel filler door is located at the rear side of the vehicle, on the left

- 2. Slowly remove the cap.
- Place the fuel filler cap in the fuel filler door
- 4. After refuelling, replace the cap.
- Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.
- Close the fuel filler door.

#### Caution

Before entering a car wash, ensure the fuel filler door is closed to avoid damage.

## **Trailer Towing**

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as carayans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

### **Maximum Towing Capacities (kg)**

	2.8L Diesel
Maximum ball load	300
Maximum towing capacity:	
Braked trailer	3,000
Unbraked trailer	750

#### Note

Exceeding these values could affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

#### Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

For mandatory towing equipment, see Towing and Loading Equipment later in this section.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

#### Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle. See Towing and Loading Equipment later in this section.

## **⚠** Warning

Holden towing equipment is recommended where it is available. Where it is not available, no recommendation is made as to the make of equipment which should be used.

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

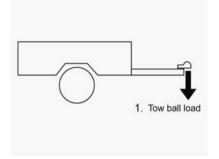
## **⚠** Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and may enter if the tailgate is open.

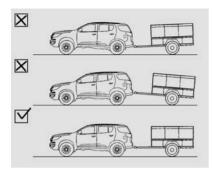
When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the tailgate open.
- Fully open the instrument panel vents and set the climate control air distribution to or or and outside air off.

#### **Trailer Recommendations**



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).



- For single-axle trailers, the tow ball load should be 10 % of the loaded trailer weight. For heavy trailers with more than one axle. the tow ball load should be 5 % -10 % of the loaded trailer weight. If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.
- Ensure the ball load does not exceed 10 % of the maximum loaded trailer weight. Refer to Towing and Loading Equipment later in this section.

- Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.
- Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.
- Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow hall load is included. See Axle Loads
- If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle.
- If the load balance cannot be corrected, use a load distribution hitch (only for tow bars that support load distribution hitches).

Towing	and	Loading	Equipment
--------	-----	---------	-----------

Tow Load	Mandatory Equipment	Recommended Equipment
Up to 750 kg	Holden tow bar	Load distribution hitch.
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
Between 750 kg and 3,000 kg	Holden tow bar	Load distribution hitch.
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
	Brakes on the trailer	

#### **Load Distribution Hitch**

- The vehicle may have a load distribution hitch.
- The load distribution hitch must be removed when not in use. Do not leave the hitch assembly in the receiver unless a trailer is attached.
- A load distribution hitch transfers load to the vehicle's front wheels aiding steering and brake performance.

- Do not exceed the maximum towing capacities specified. See Maximum Towing Capacities previously in this section.

#### **Towing Precautions**

 When heavily loading the vehicle or when towing, inflate tyres to the maximum recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* 253.

- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 Nm (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- If the vehicle has headlamp range adjustment, headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes when descending steep hills.
- Ensure that the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate.
   Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.

 The M10 anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.

#### **Trailer Brakes**

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with a trailer mass of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

#### **Running-in when Towing**

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

#### Off-Road Loading and Towing

To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle (and trailer) and to improve safety when operating the vehicle

off-road, reduce its speed and minimise the load being carried or towed.

#### **Vehicle Maintenance**

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service/ Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

# Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

If the system detects trailer sway movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the trailer sway ceases. While the system is working, keep steering as still as possible.

TSC is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system and may be disabled by turning the Traction Control System (TCS) or ESC off. See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇒ 204. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇒ 204.

# Conversions and Add-Ons

## Add-On Electrical Equipment

#### **Fitting Driving Lamps**

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

The Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

#### Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

#### Fitting Roo/Nudge Bars

If a roo/nudge bar is to be fitted, it is critical that the Holden approved roo/nudge bar is used. Other types must not be fitted.

The Holden roo/nudge bar is available from a Holden Dealer and has been tested for compatibility with the vehicle's design, including the Holden airbag system.

## **⚠** Warning

Fitting other types of roo/nudge bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo/nudge bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in urban areas, as they increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

#### **Snorkel Intake**

It is necessary to reverse the snorkel intake:

- When driving in snowy conditions.
- Where there are other heavy contaminants such as excessive dust or insect swarms.
- To prevent snow or other contaminants from entering the snorkel and engine air intake.



- Loosen the two screws.
- Remove the snorkel intake.

- Rotate the snorkel intake 180° and refit, securing with the two screws
- Once conditions have stopped, return the snorkel intake to its original position.

Vehicle Care	
General Information General Information	229 229
Vehicle Checks	
Doing Your Own	
Service Work	
Bonnet	231
Engine Compartment	
Overview	
Engine Oil	233
Engine Oil Life System	
Automatic Transmission	
Fluid	235
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	236
Engine Coolant	236
Washer Fluid	237
Brake Fluid	237
Battery	
Fuel Filter	

Bulb Replacement ..... 240

Diesel Fuel System

**Bulb Replacement** 

Headlamps Front Turn Signal Lamps Taillamps Licence Plate Lamp	. 242 . 243
Electrical System	0.47
Fuses Engine Compartment Fuse	. 247
Block	. 248
Instrument Panel Fuse Block	251
	. 231
Vehicle Tools Tools	252
	. 202
Wheels and Tyres	
Wheels and Tyres	
Tyre Pressure	. 253
Tyre Pressure Monitor	
System	. 254
Tyre Pressure Monitor	
Operation	. 256
Tread Depth	
Tyre Rotation	
Buying New Tyres	
Wheel Covers	
Tyre Chains	
Tyre Changing	
Jump Starting	
Jump Starting	. 265

Towing Towing the Vehicle Towing Another Vehicle	
Appearance Care	260
Exterior Care	205

## **General Information**

Where specified, use only Holden genuine parts and accessories.

## Vehicle Storage

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Clean and preserve rubber seals.
- Change engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check coolant and corrosion protection.
- Adjust the tyre pressure to the value specified for a full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Close the bonnet.

Before returning the vehicle to the road:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.
  - Check the power windows operation.
- Check the tyre pressures.
- · Fill the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.

#### **Emission Information**

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

## **Emission Control System**

Major emission control systems that the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer.

#### Owner responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

## **⚠** Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

#### **Maintenance requirements**

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance schedule, in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service/Warranty Booklet.

## **Vehicle Checks**

## Doing Your Own Service Work



## ⚠ Warning

Do not touch engine compartment components when the ignition is on.

#### **Bonnet**

#### **Opening**



Pull the release lever rearwards and upwards.



#### Note

Do not step on the front Nudge Bar (if equipped) to access the engine compartment

Push the safety catch towards the driver's side and open the bonnet.



Pull the support rod up and away from the holder and secure.

#### Closing

## **⚠** Warning

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, check each time, before the bonnet is closed, that the contact area is unobstructed.

Before closing the bonnet, be sure all the filler caps are closed properly.

#### 232 Vehicle Care

- 1. Place the support rod into the holder.
- 2. Lower the bonnet to approximately 30 cm and allow it to drop into the catch.
- 3. Check that the bonnet is engaged.
- If it is not engaged, open the bonnet and repeat Steps 2 and 3.

#### Note

Do not push on the bonnet to close.

## **⚠** Warning

If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

## **Engine Compartment Overview**

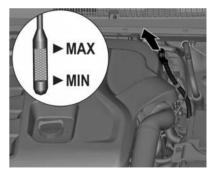


**Diesel Engine** 

## **Engine Oil**

### **Checking Oil Level**

- Check the engine oil level regularly and before a long journey.
- Maintain the correct level.
- The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least 10 minutes.
- 1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.



2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean.

- 3. Insert the dipstick to the stop on the handle
- 4. Remove and read the engine oil level

The level should be at the MAX mark. Add oil if the level is at the MIN mark.

5. Insert the dipstick to the stop on the handle.

#### Note

The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

#### **Adding Engine Oil**



The engine oil filler cap is located on the top of the engine.

- 1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
- 2. Add enough oil to reach below the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.
- 3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary.

The engine oil must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

#### Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

4. Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly.

## **⚠** Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested, can cause illness or death.

Keep out of reach of children.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

Be careful when draining the engine oil as it may be hot.

# Engine Oil Life System When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is

indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

On some vehicles, when the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on to indicate that an oil change is necessary. See Engine Oil soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. For vehicles without the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message, an oil change is needed when the OIL LIFE REMAINING percentage is near 0%. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check

the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service/Warranty Booklet. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

## How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. Always reset the engine oil life to 100% after every oil change. It will not reset itself. To reset the engine oil life system:

- Display the OIL LIFE REMAINING on the Driver Information System (DIC). See Driver Information Centre (DIC)
   ⇒ 80.
- Press and hold SET/CLR for several seconds. The oil life will change to 100%.

If the vehicle has a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message and it comes back on when the vehicle is started and/or the OIL LIFE REMAINING is near 0%, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

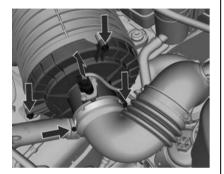
## Automatic Transmission Fluid

#### How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer.

## **Engine Air Cleaner/Filter**



To replace the engine air filter, release the clamp and remove the air cleaner outlet duct. Disconnect the air sensor, unscrew the 3 screws and remove the filter housing.

# Engine Coolant Engine Coolant Level

Check the coolant level at least once a week.

## **Checking Coolant Level**

## **⚠** Warning

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the line on the coolant reservoir.

### **Adding Coolant**

#### Caution

If the coolant level is too low, engine damage may occur.

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

#### Note

- 1. Turn the ignition off.
- 2. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
- 3. Add the required amount of coolant.
- Replace the cap securely.
   If the coolant requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer

## **⚠** Warning

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with coolant.

Wash off with soap and water.

Keep out of reach of children.

If the coolant level is low, there may be a leak in the cooling system:

- Look for leaks at the radiator hoses and connections, heater hoses and connections, radiator and water pump.
  - Take care when checking these areas as they may still be hot.
- If a major leak or other problems are found, do not run the engine until all problems have been repaired. Contact a Holden Dealer.
- If no problems are found, refill the coolant reservoir. See Adding Coolant previously in this section.

## **⚠** Warning

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.

#### **Washer Fluid**



Check the fluid level weekly.

#### **Adding Washer Fluid**

1. Lift the front of the cap up.

Use the correct amount of washer fluid additive. Refer to a Holden Dealer.

Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they froth up and damage the wiper rubbers.

2. Secure the cap.

## **Brake Fluid**

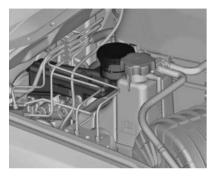
## **⚠** Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.

#### Caution

Avoid contact with eyes and skin. Wash any affected area immediately.

#### **Checking Brake Fluid Level**



The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If the fluid level is correct, do not remove the reservoir cap, as brake fluid exposed to the atmosphere will quickly absorb moisture.

#### **Adding Brake Fluid**

- 1. Turn the ignition off.
- Wipe the sides of the cap clean.

- 3. Rotate the brake fluid reservoir cap anticlockwise and remove.
- 4. Top up with the recommended brake fluid.

## **Warning**

Using brake fluid other than GM recommended brake fluid may cause corrosion to components of the braking system and reduced braking performance.

Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

Secure the cap by rotating clockwise and clean up any spilt fluid.

If the brake fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

#### Caution

Do not dispose of used brake fluid with household waste.

Use the local, authorised waste management facility.

## **Battery**

## **⚠** Warning

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may be ignited. Therefore, you should keep sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.

The vehicle battery is maintenance free, provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short distance driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the battery according to the procedure described in Battery Disconnection, thus avoiding its discharge.

#### **Battery Replacement**

For replacement, refer to a Holden Dealer or authorised repairer.

#### Caution

Do not dispose of batteries with household waste.

Use the local, authorised waste management facility.

#### **Battery Disconnection**

The battery may discharge if the vehicle is not used for approximately four weeks.

To disconnect the battery:

- 1. Turn the ignition off.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is turned off before reconnecting the vehicle battery.

For emergency starting when the battery is flat, see *Jump Starting* ⇒ 265.

#### **Fuel Filter**

When the water level in fuel filter is excessive, **Water in Fuel – Contact Service** illuminates on the instrument panel.

#### Caution

The engine and fuel system may be seriously damaged if the vehicle is driven while **Water in Fuel – Contact Service** is illuminated.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately to have the fuel filter drained.

#### Note

The fuel filter will be drained when the vehicle is serviced. Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

## Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

The system requires bleeding if the vehicle has run out of fuel.

#### Note

A minimum of 5 litres of diesel fuel must be in the tank for the bleeding operation to work correctly.

- Turn the ignition on for 15 seconds, and then off.
- 2. Repeat Step 1 three times.
- 3. Start the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds.
- 4. Repeat Steps 1 to 3 after 5 seconds.

If the engine does not start, contact a Holden Dealer.

## Wiper Blade Replacement

Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades.

- Replace hard, brittle or cracked blades or those that smear dirt on the windscreen.
- If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the blades and the windscreen. See Exterior Care \$ 269.

## **Bulb Replacement**

Contact a trained service technician if unsure about the bulb replacement process.

When replacing bulbs:

- Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
- Turn off related switches.
- Fit bulbs of the specified wattage only.
- Do not touch bulbs or reflectors with bare hands.
- Clean stained bulbs with methylated spirits.

## Bulbs to be Changed by a Holden Dealer

- Turn signal lamps on the exterior mirrors
- Courtesy lamp
- Reading lamps
- Instrument panel lamps

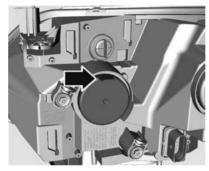
- LED rear lamps
- · Centre high-mounted brake lamp
- Fog lamps
- Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

#### Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

## Headlamps

## **High Beam**

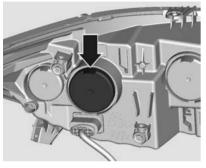


1. Remove the protective cover.

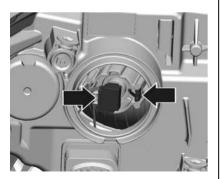


- Unplug the connector from bulb.
- 3. Press the spring clip outward and disengage it.
- 4. Remove the bulb from the reflector housing.
- When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector.
- 6. Engage the spring clip.
- Plug the connector onto bulb.
- 8. Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

#### Low Beam



1. Remove the protective cover.



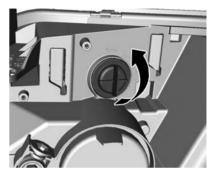
- 2. Unplug the connector from bulb.
- Press the spring clip and disengage the bulb.
- 4. Remove the bulb from the reflector housing.
- When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector and press the bulb into position.
- Plug the connector onto bulb.
- Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

### **Headlight Aim**

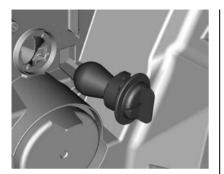
#### Caution

If the headlights need to be re-aimed, it is recommended that the vehicle is taken to a Holden dealer for service, because it is related with safety.

## **Front Turn Signal Lamps**

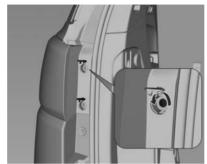


 Rotate bulb holder counterclockwise and disengage.

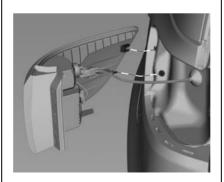


- 2. Push the bulb into the socket slightly, rotate counterclockwise and remove the bulb.
- Insert a new bulb into the bulb holder and refit the holder into the reflector and rotate clockwise to engage.

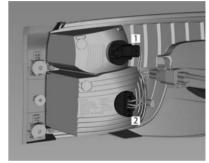
## **Taillamps**



1. Open both covers unscrewing both screws.



Remove the tail light assembly by pulling straight out of the body. Remove the electrical connector.

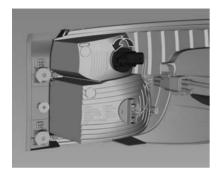


3. Turn signal light (1)

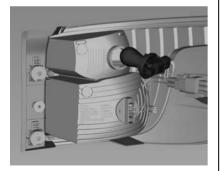
Tail light/brake light (2)

For LED version just replace lights (1). The tail light/brake light should be replaced by a Holden dealer.

#### 244 Vehicle Care



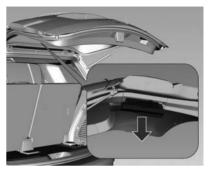
4. Rotate the relevant bulb holder counterclockwise.



- Remove bulb holder. Push the bulb into the socket slightly, rotate counterclockwise and remove the bulb.
- Insert the bulb into the bulb holder. Insert the bulb holder into the tail light assembly, connect the electrical connector and fit it into place. Install tail light assembly in body and tighten the screws. Close the covers and engage.
- 7. Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lights.

## **Liftgate Tail Lights**

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Remove the cover.

Tail light/brake light

For LED version the tail light/ brake light should be replaced by a Holden dealer.

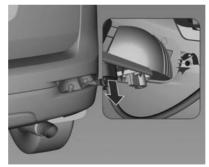


3. Rotate the relevant bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.

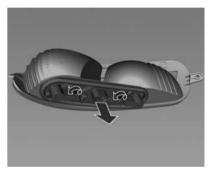


- Remove bulb form the holder. Push the bulb into the socket slightly to the bulb.
- Insert a new bulb into the bulb holder and refit the holder into the tail light assembly and connect the electrical connector. Close the cover and engage.
- 6. Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lights.

#### **Reverse Lamps**



 Behind the rear bumper, unscrew the screw to remove the reverse lamp assembly and disconnect the electrical connector.



Unscrew the both screws to remove the bulb holder.



- Replace the bulb.
- Insert and turn the bulb into the bulb holder and screw it into place. Install the reverse lamp assembly in body and tighten the screw. Connect the electrical connector.
- 5. Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lights.

## **Licence Plate Lamp**



- 1. Insert a screwdriver on the left side of the bulb housing.
- 2. Press to the side and release the spring.
- Remove the bulb housing by pulling downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.
- Disconnect the electrical connector.
- 5. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage.
- Remove the bulb from the holder and replace the bulb.

- Insert the bulb holder into the bulb housing by rotating clockwise.
- 8. Connect the electrical connector.
- Insert the bulb housing into the tailgate.
- 10. Check lamp operation.

## **Electrical System**

#### **Fuses**

Fuse boxes are located:

- In the engine compartment
- In a storage compartment on the driver's side

There is a primary fuse holder connected to the positive battery post.

## **⚠** Warning

Turn off the ignition (LOCK position) and any electrical equipment before changing a fuse.

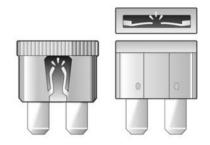
- Replace blown fuses promptly.
- A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire.
- Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.
- Some functions are protected by several fuses.

## **Marning**

When replacing a fuse be sure to use a fuse of the specified amperage.

Never install a wire or similar as it could damage electrical components and cause a fire.

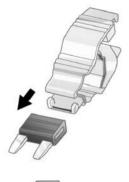
Any improper alterations to the electrical system may cause a fire hazard and engine damage. To maintain your own safety and that of the vehicle, have any work involving the electrical system or the replacement of high current fuses or relays carried out by a Holden Dealer.

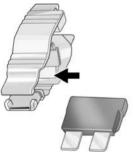




#### **Fuse Extractor**

A fuse extractor can be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.

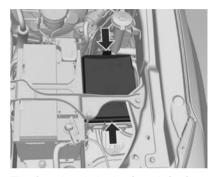






Place the fuse extractor on the top or side of the fuse to extract the fuse.

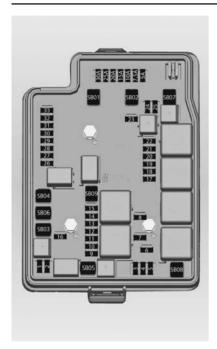
## Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover, lift it upward and remove it.

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.



Mini Fuses	Usage
1	10A – Compressor A/C Clutch

Mini Fuses	Usage
2	Not Used
3	15A - Electric Power Steering (EPS) (if available)
4	Not Used
5	15A – Horn
6	15A – Front Fog Lamp (if available)
7	10A – High Beam LH
8	10A – High Beam RH
9	7.5A - Engine Control Module - (Diesel)
10	15A – Powertrain Relay (3) – (Diesel)
11	20A – Engine Control Module (1) (Diesel)
12	10A – Powertrain Relay (1)
13	10A – Powertrain Relay (2)
14	15A – Powertrain Relay (4)

Mini	Hanna.
Fuses	Usage
15	15A – Run Crank Relay Signal
16	15A – Automatic Transmission Control Module (if available)
17	10A – Transfer Case Module, Head Lamp Leveling, Trailer Interface Module (if available)
18	10A – Power Supply Cluster - A/C - Airbag Module
19	20A – Fuel Pump (Diesel)
20	Not Used
21	30A – Rear Defogger (if available)
22	15A - Outside Rear View Mirror Defogger (if available)
23	Not Used

Mini Fuses	Usage
24	20A - Rear Wiper (SUV)
25	10A - Front / Rear (SUV) Washer Pump
26	10A - Park Assist (if available)
27	5A – Body Control Module
28	15A – Auxiliary Lamps Provision (If equipped)
29	30A – ABS or ESC Module (if available)
30	10A – Horn
31	15A – Body Control Module
32	15A – Engine Control Module (Battery) (Diesel)
33	10A – Communication Wire Between Modules

JCase Fuses	Usage
SB01	50A – ABS or ESC Module Pump (if available)
SB02	30A – Transfer Case Control Module (4X4) (if available)
SB03	60A – Preheating Glow Plug Module (Diesel)
SB04	-
SB05	30A – Starter Motor Solenoid
SB06	30A – Front Wiper
SB07	30A – Fuel Heater (Diesel)
SB08	Not Used (Diesel)
SB09	30A – Spare

Maxi	Usage
F34*	30A – Trailer Hitch Module (if available)

Maxi	Usage
*: Located near battery positive terminal	

Relays	Usage
RLY01	Starter
RLY03	High Beam
RLY05	Not Used
RLY08	Front Wiper Control
RLY09	Front Wiper Speed
RLY10	Rear Defogger and Outside Rear View Mirror Defogger (if available)
RLY11	Powertrain
RLY12	A/C Clutch
RLY13	Fuel Heater (Diesel)
RLY14	Not Used (Diesel)
RLY15	Not Used
RLY18	Run Crank
RLY19	Fuel Pump (Diesel)

# Instrument Panel Fuse Block

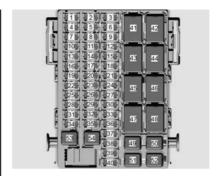
The fuse box is behind the instrument panel cap.



Remove the instrument panel cap in the direction of the arrow.

Reinstall the cap in reverse order.

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.



Mini Fuses	Usage
1	20A – Body Control Module (6)
3	20A – Cigarette Lighter (if available)
6	20A – Front and Rear Power Outlets (if available)
7	30A – Body Control Module (8)
10	20A – Radio (if available)
11	2A – Ignition Switch

Mini Fuses	Usage
12	15A - Side Blind Zone (SBZ) (If available)
13	15A – Body Control Module (3)
14	10A – Front A/C Control Module
15	15A – Seat Heated (If available)
16	15A – Body Control Module (1)
17	30A – Front Door Power Window Switch
18	10A – Rear A/C Blower
19	30A – Rear Door Power Window Switch (if available)
20	15A – Body Control Module (4)
21	10A – Spare
22	30A – Power Seat (if available)

Mini Fuses	Usage
25	10A – Sensing and Diagnose Module (SDM)
26	15A – Body Control Module (2)
27	2A – Clock Spring
28	7.5A – Data Link Connector (DLC)
30	10A – Tailgate Lock
31	10A – Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC), Displays - Radio (Center Stack), USB
33	10A – Central Gateway Module (CGM) - Cyber Security
34	30A – Front A/C Blower
35	30A – Rear A/C Blower

Mini Fuses	Usage
37	10A – Front Collision Alert (FCA) / Rain Sensor (if available)
39	10A – Rear View Mirrors (if available)

JCase Fuses	Usage
53	40A – BUS-C (fuses: F12, F30, F33, F37, F39, F40)
54	40A – Accessory (12V)

Relays	Usage
RLY43	Rear A/C Blower
RLY45	C-Enable
RLY46	RAP and Accessory (12V)
RLY47	RAP and Accessory (12V)
RLY48	Run relay

## **Vehicle Tools**

#### **Tools**

The jack and tools are located behind a cover on the driver's side of the load compartment. See *Tyre Changing* ⇒ 260.



- 1. Lift lever to unlatch.
- 2. Remove the cover.
- 3. Unhook the strap.
- 4. Remove the jack.
- 5. Remove the tools.

## Wheels and Tyres

#### Tyre and Rim Condition

- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Check the rims for damage. Contact a Holden Dealer, if in doubt.

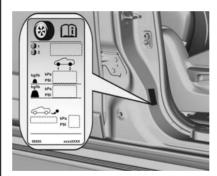
## **Tyre Pressure**

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.

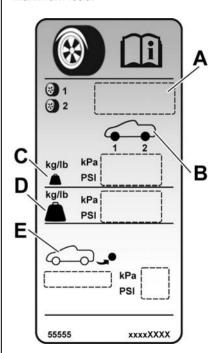
 Tyre pressure should be checked when cold as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.

- Check the air pressure of tyres (including the spare) weekly to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.
- Replace any valve dust caps or extensions.

#### Tyre Placard



Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for maximum load.



- A. Tyre specifications
- B. Tyre positions
- C. Normal load (up to three people)
- D. Full load (five people plus load)
- E. Spare tyre information

# Tyre Pressure Monitor System

This vehicle may have a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

#### Caution

Modifications made to the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) by anyone other than an authorised service facility may void authorisation to use the system.

Maintaining manufacturer's recommended tire pressure is part of best practices to optimize the fuel consumption of the vehicle.

The Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tyre pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

#### Note

The spare wheel may not be fitted with a TPMS sensor.

The tire pressure monitoring system checks the pressure of all four road wheels once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

#### Caution

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure light.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold. If required, the tires should be inflated to the pressure specified on the tire placard. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the tire placard, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, the TPMS illuminates a low tire pressure light when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

#### Note

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure light illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

#### Caution

Tire sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using tire sealants is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure light. When the system detects a malfunction, the light will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent

the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction light after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

#### Tire Learn (If equipped)

The sensors are calibrated to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool. See your dealer for service.

#### **Vehicle Loading**

Select SET/CLR to define one of following options:

**Light**: for comfort pressure up to 3 people.

**ECO**: for ECO pressure up to 3 people.

Max: for full loading.

The ECO tire pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

The tire pressure tables show all possible tire combinations. See *Tyre Pressure ⇔* 282.

If the tire pressure shall be reduced or increased on a vehicle with tire pressure monitoring system, switch off ignition. After adjusting tire pressure switch on ignition and select the according setting as shown previously in this section.

After inflating driving may be required to update the tire pressure values in the DIC. During this time (!) may light up.

#### Caution

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not

(Continued)

#### Caution (Continued)

reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure light.

# Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation



When a low tyre pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tyre pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Wheels and Tyres* ⋄ 253.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tire displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tyre pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇔ 80.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and must be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label shows the size of the original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for the tires when they are cold. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇒ 282, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Wheels and Tyres* ⇒ 253.

The TPMS can warn about a low tyre pressure condition but it does not replace normal tyre

maintenance.

#### Caution

Tyre sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

## TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at

each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced and the sensor calibration process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Calibration Process" later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor calibration process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor calibration process. See "TPMS Sensor Calibration Process" later in this section.

- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor calibration process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly, it cannot detect or signal a low tyre condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message come on and stay on.

## **TPMS Sensor Calibration Process**

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the tires or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor. calibration process should also be performed after replacing a spare tire with a road tire containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tire/ wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service.

## **Tread Depth**

Check tread depth at regular intervals.



- Replace the tyres when they are worn to the point where the tread wear indicators (TWI) appear.
- Tyres age, even if they are not used. Replacement of tyres every six years is recommended.

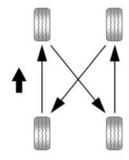
## **Marning**

Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded (Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

## Tyre Rotation



It is recommended that you rotate tires at every scheduled maintenance service

Different forces on the front and rear tyres make them wear differently, depending on several factors, such as road surface, driving style, suspension alignment, wheel balancing, tyre pressure, etc.

The owner must evaluate the vehicle wear. This includes regular tyre rotation, which should be performed at each inspection. Tyre rotation is vital to achieving even tread wear and long tyre life.

Tyre rotation must be performed as indicated in the illustration.

Tyre condition is checked at periodic inspections by your Dealer, who can diagnose signs of uneven wear that may compromise your car's safety and performance.

Never include the temporary spare tyre in the tyre rotation due to size differences.

#### Caution

 Ageing causes tyre rubber to deteriorate. This also happens to the spare tyre even if it has not been used.
 (Continued)

#### Caution (Continued)

- Tyre ageing depends on many conditions of use including temperature, load conditions, and tyre inflation pressure.
- A spare tyre which has not been used within a 6-year period should be used in emergencies only. If you need to use this tyre, drive at low speeds.

## **Buying New Tyres**

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle for tyre size and load rating.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride
- Handling
- Speedometer accuracy
- Vehicle ground clearance
- Tyre clearance
- Snow chain clearance

## **⚠** Warning

Do not use different sizes or types of tyres and wheels than those originally fitted to the vehicle. Safety and performance of the vehicle may be affected. It may also affect road handling and lead to serious injury.

When replacing tyres, install all four tyres and wheels of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.

## **Wheel Covers**

Use wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the vehicle and which comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements.

## **⚠** Warning

Use of incorrect tyres or wheel covers may result in damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

## **Tyre Chains**

Holden recommends the use of tyre chains on rear wheels only.

Due to limited tyre clearances, tyre chains may cause damage to your vehicle. Fitting of tyre chains is at the risk of the owner.

If you choose to fit tyre chains, you should:

- observe all local regulations and recommendations regarding the use of tyre chains;
- observe all local regulations and recommendations regarding the use of tyre chains;
- observe all local regulations and recommendations regarding the use of tyre chains;
- use a correctly sized, well-fitted, diamond-pattern tyre chain;
- not exceed speed of 30 km/h;
- stop the vehicle in the event of any unusual noise;
- check the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇒ 253.

Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇒ 204.

If driving in snowy conditions with a snorkel, see Snorkel Intake under Add-On Electrical Equipment ⇒ 226.

## **Tyre Changing**

## **⚠** Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Do not jack a vehicle with a trailer attached. Remove the trailer first.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Vehicles with alloy wheels may have a steel spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h if the tyre size or tread pattern of the spare tyre is different to the other tyres on the vehicle. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

- 1. Park on a hard, level surface, in a safe location.
- 2. Apply the park brake firmly.
- 3. Place the shift lever in position **P**.
- 4. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
- 5. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
- Chock the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tyre with a suitable solid object.

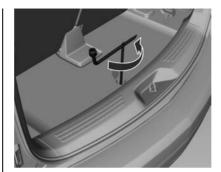
#### Note

Do not change more than one wheel at one time.

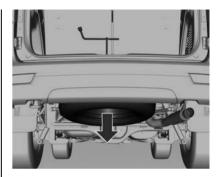
Remove the tools. See *Tools* ⇒ 252.

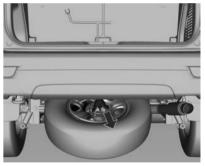


- Rotate the spare wheel winch access cap anticlockwise to remove. Lift the carpet flap to access the winch slot.
- Assemble the wheel wrench, jack handle extensions and the jack handle using a screwdriver.
- Insert the chiselled end of the jack handle through the hole and into the slot.



- Rotate the wheel wrench anticlockwise to lower the spare tyre to the ground.
- Continue to rotate the wheel wrench until the spare tyre can be pulled out from under the vehicle.





 Tilt the retainer and slide it up the cable so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.

#### 262 Vehicle Care

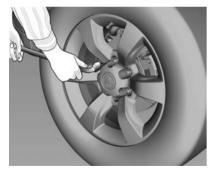
14. Place the spare tyre near the flat tyre.

#### Wheel nut removal

15. Remove the centre cap by placing the chisel end of the wheel wrench into one of the slots on the cap and gently prise the cap out.

#### Note

To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the wheel wrench and the wheel.

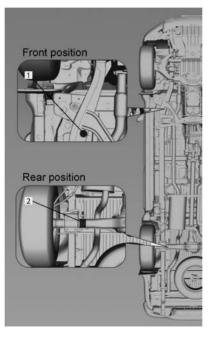


 Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen all the wheel nuts.

#### Note

Do not remove the wheel nuts at this stage.

#### Jacking procedure



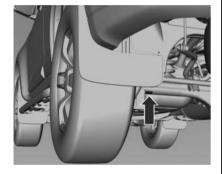
#### Front position:





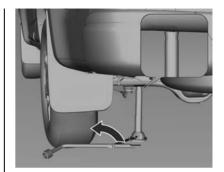
If the flat tyre is on the front of the vehicle, position the jack under the chassis rail between the two braces as shown (1).

Rear position:





If the flat tyre is on the rear, position the jack under the rear axle and get as close as possible to the shock absorber (2).



When positioning the jack under the rear axle housing, confirm that the slot on the upper side of the jack fits on the axle.

17. Set the jack to the necessary height before positioning it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

## ⚠ Warning

Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

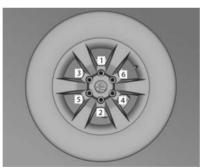
Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

- 18. Attach the jack handle and with the jack correctly aligned.
- 19. Rotate the handle until the wheel is clear of the ground.
- 20. Remove the wheel nuts.
- 21. Exchange the wheel on the vehicle with the spare wheel.
- Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel nuts and studs, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

## **⚠** Danger

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts as the nuts may come loose. The vehicle wheel could fall off and may lead to serious injury or death.

- 23. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts towards the wheel.
- 24. Tighten each wheel nut by hand, then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.
- 25. Lower the vehicle by reversing the jacking procedure.
- 26. Remove the jack from under the vehicle.



27. With the wheel on the ground, use the wheel wrench to tighten the wheel nuts in a crosswise sequence.

## **⚠** Warning

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 Nm (Newton metres). Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque, as wheel nuts which have not been tightened properly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

- 28. Stow the replaced wheel, by reversing Steps 8 to 13.
- 29. Stow the tools in the storage compartment. See *Tools* \$\dip\$ 252.
- 30. Have the flat tyre renewed or repaired.

When reinstalling the repaired wheel:

- 1. Install the centre cap.
- Place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it is flush with the wheel.

## **Jump Starting**

Read the following warnings and procedure in full before attempting to jump start the vehicle.

If you are still unsure about jump starting, Holden strongly recommends for your safety and that of the vehicle that you seek the assistance of a suitably trained service technician.

## **⚠** Warning

Do not push start or tow start the vehicle. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start, but do not push start the vehicle.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, adhere to the following when working near a battery:

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery in the engine compartment.
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.
- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses and avoid leaning over the battery.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.
- Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.
- If a permanently connected hands free telephone kit is fitted to the vehicle, remove the fuse for the telephone kit before jump starting.
   Remember to replace the fuse afterwards.

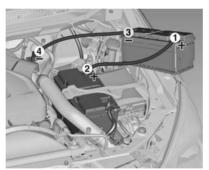
#### 266 Vehicle Care

- A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures of 0°C.
  - Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jumper leads.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 volts). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged battery.
- Use jumper leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 25 mm<sup>2</sup>.
- Do not disconnect the discharged battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical devices.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.

#### **Jump Starting Procedure**

1. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.

- 2. Apply the park brakes.
- Place the selector lever in position P.
- 4. Turn the ignition off.
- Turn off all lamps and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers or any lights needed for the work area.



- Connect one end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery (1).
- Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (2).

- Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3).
- Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point, such as the engine block or an engine mounting bolt (4).

Connect as far away from the discharged battery as possible (at least 60 cm).

#### Note

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts within the engine compartment.

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump start and allow to idle for at least
   minutes
- 11. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.
  - Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of 1 minute.
- Allow both engines to idle for approximately 3 minutes with the leads connected.

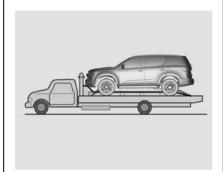
- Switch on the headlamps and the heated rear window of the vehicle that received the jump start.
- Leave the engines running while removing the BLACK negative jumper lead first, followed by the RED positive jumper lead.

#### Note

While removing each clamp, do not touch any other metal while the other end remains attached.

## **Towing**

## **Towing the Vehicle**



A flat-bed tow truck is the best method of towing the vehicle to avoid damage.

## ⚠ Warning

No passenger should remain in the vehicle being towed.

Proper lifting or towing equipment is necessary when lifting or towing the vehicle to prevent damage. State and local laws must be followed.

In an emergency, the vehicle may be towed on all four wheels for short distances only, using the front towing eyes.



#### Caution

No load applied to an individual front towing eye shall exceed 1,500 kg (static or dynamic).

#### **Emergency Towing Procedure**

Tow only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds:

1. Fit the towing equipment to the front towing eyes.

Do not attach towing equipment to the bumpers or brackets, suspension or cross members.

- Turn the ignition key to ON to enable the steering lock, windscreen wipers and turn signals operation.
- Place the selector lever in N or neutral.
- 4. Release the park brake.

#### Note

If the vehicle's battery is flat and the vehicle requires towing, see *Interruption of Power Supply* ⇒ 197.

#### Note

- A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes.
- Drive slowly when towing.
- Power assist for brakes and power steering are not available when the engine is turned off.

The brakes and steering still function, but require greater effort.

- To prevent exhaust fumes entering the towed vehicle, close the windows and press <a>.</a>
- Vehicles with damaged transmissions must not be towed.
- The wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must be in good condition.
- Only the driver should be inside a towed vehicle.

### **Towing Another Vehicle**

In an emergency, another vehicle may be towed using the rear towing eye. State and local laws must be followed.

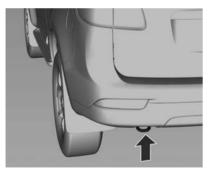


#### Caution

No load applied to a rear towing eye is to exceed 1,375 kg (static or dynamic).

#### Vehicle Recovery





The vehicle may be recovered using the front or rear towing eyes.

Attach a tow rope or other suitably rated system to the towing eyes.

Ensure all equipment is in good condition and is being used correctly.

#### Caution

The front towing eyes are rated to 1,500 kg each and the rear towing eye to 1,375 kg. Any load (static or dynamic) applied to these locations must not exceed the rated capacity of each point.

Care should be taken not to damage the bumper fascia or other vehicle components with the tow rope or recovery system, during recovery.

## **Appearance Care**

#### **Exterior Care**

#### Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Holden Dealer.

#### Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse chamois frequently. Use separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

## ⚠ Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

#### **Exterior Lamps**

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

#### Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen and below the front bumper, when washing the vehicle.

#### **Polishing and Waxing**

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

## Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

#### Caution

Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

#### Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

#### **Paintwork Damage**

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

#### Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

#### Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

#### **Interior Care**

## **⚠** Warning

Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's recommendations. Water based cleaners, rather than solvent based cleaners, are recommended.

Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

#### Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with a mild, non-abrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing, thoroughly, sponge the solution out of the belts.

Avoid wipe damp cloth on areas near of Front Seat power switch, because the liquid can compromise the Seat's working. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

#### Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

#### **Plastic and Rubber Parts**

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

#### **Floor Mats**

Ensure that floor mats, when fitted, are securely fastened and do not interfere with pedal operation.

# Service and Maintenance

Cananal Information

Service Information 27	73
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts	
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants	<b>'</b>

## **General Information**

#### **Service Information**

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

See your Service/Warranty Booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

#### **Engine Oil Life System**

The vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter.

The frequency of the oil change depends on driving patterns, engine RPM and engine temperature.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, Change engine oil soon will appear in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

When Change engine oil soon is displayed, have the engine oil and filter changed as soon as possible, within the next 1,000 km.

It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for a longer period than that shown in the Maintenance schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

## **Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts**

### **Recommended Fluids and Lubricants**

Engine Type	2.8L Diesel
Engine oil specification	SAE 5W-30; <b>E</b> dexos (dexos2™)
Coolant specification	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant, conforming to specification number GM6277M
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron <sup>®</sup> VI
Transfer case fluid (four-wheel drive)	Dexron <sup>®</sup> VI
Differential oil	Synthetic Hypoid 75W/90 GL5
Brake fluid	DOT 4 Hydraulic brake fluid conforming to specification number GMW3356
Battery	12 volts, 90 amp hours

## **Technical Data**

#### **Vehicle Identification**

Vehicle Identification	
Number (VIN)	275
Identification Plate	275

#### **Vehicle Data**

Engine Data	277
Vehicle Weight	278
Vehicle Dimensions	
Capacities and	
Specifications	281
Tyre Pressure	282

## **Vehicle Identification**

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

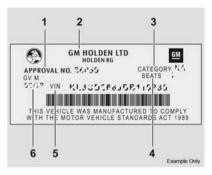
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located on the chassis rail on the driver's side.



The VIN is also located on the instrument panel visible through the windscreen.

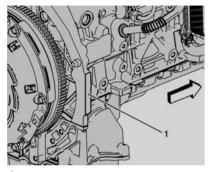
#### **Identification Plate**

An identification label is located on the front door frame.



- 1: Approval number
- 2: Manufacturer
- 3: Category
- 4: Number of seats
- 5: Vehicle identification number
- 6: Compliance date

## **Engine Number**



⇒: Front of vehicle

The engine serial number (1) is located on the right side at the rear of the engine block.

#### **Built Date**



A label containing the vehicle built date is located on the front passenger's door frame.

## **Vehicle Data**

## **Engine Data**

Engine Type	2.8 L4 Turbo Diesel
Number of cylinders	4
Engine	2776 cc
Engine power	Please refer to holden.com.au
Engine torque	Please refer to holden.com.au
Diesel fuel	Complies with Euro Standard EN590

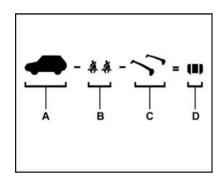
## **Vehicle Weight**

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

#### **Maximum Vehicle Carry Capacity**

	Carrying capacity (occupants, accessories and luggage) (kg)
LT	626
LTZ	617
Z71	616

#### **Example Loading Guide**



#### Example 1:

- A. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 645 kg)
- B. Subtract occupant weight (example 2 x 80 kg = 160 kg)
- Subtract mass of fitted accessories (see the following table) (example 82 kg)
- D. Available luggage capacity (645  $160 82 = 403 \text{ kg}^*$ )
- \*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded. See Axle Loads further on in this section.

#### Example 2:

- A. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 645 kg)
- B. Subtract occupant weight (example 5 x 80 kg = 400 kg)
- C. Subtract mass of fitted accessories (see the following table) (example 40 kg)
- D. Available luggage capacity (645  $-400 40 = 205 \text{ kg}^*$ )

\*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded. See Axle Loads further on in this section.

#### **Accessory mass examples**

Towbar	31 kg
Bull bar	53 kg
Nudge bar	6 kg
Cargo barrier	12 kg
Snorkel	3 kg

## Axle Loads Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options, tow ball download when towing, or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

	Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
All models	1450	1600

## 280 Technical Data

## **Vehicle Dimensions**

Dimensions (mm)

	Length	Width (incl. mirrors)	Height (incl. roof rail)	Front Track	Rear Track	Front Overhang	Wheel Base
LT	4887	2132	1840	1570	1588	957	2845
LTZ / Z71	4887	2132	1846	1570	1588	957	2845

The above figures are based on the design dimensions.

## **Capacities and Specifications**

Engine Type	2.8 L4 Turbo Diesel
Refill engine oil including filter (approximately)	5.6 L
Coolant (approximately)	9.0 L
Fuel tank	76.0 L

## **Tyre Pressure**

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile		Recommended Pressure												
		Up to	3 pe	ople (L	ight)	Up to	o 3 pe	ople (E	ECO)	F	ull loa	ad (Max	<b>(</b> )	Spa	are
		Fre	ont	Re	ar	Fre	ont	Re	ear	Fre	ont	Re	ar	_	_
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
255/65 R17 SL 110S	17 x 7.0J	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	275	40	275	40
265/60 R18 SL 110T	18 x 7.5J	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	275	40	275	40

# Customer Information

Customer	' Inform	ation

Trademarks and Licence	
Agreements 2	83
Owner Assistance 2	83

## Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Vehicle L	)ata	Rec	ording	and	
Privacy					285

## **Customer Information**

# Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Dexos<sup>®</sup> is a trademark of General Motors LLC

Dexron® and Dexcool® are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC

#### **Owner Assistance**

#### **Holden Customer Care**

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

#### **Holden Dealerships**

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

#### **Holden Customer Care Office**

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

#### **Operating Hours**

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST Saturday: 9am – 1pm AEST

#### Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

#### **Email**

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

### holdencustomercare@gm.com Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

# The Manager Holden Customer Care Centre GPO Box 1714 Melbourne 3001

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business

- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O.V.I.N.), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glovebox
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glovebox.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is a quicker and more effective means of communication.

#### **New Zealand**

The information in this Owner's Manual applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

#### 0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

#### holdencustomercare@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542

## Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

#### **Event Data Recorders**

The vehicle has a number of sophisticated systems that monitor and control several vehicle data. Some data may be stored during regular operation to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions, other data is stored only in a crash or near crash event by systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

The systems may record data about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated (e.g. engine speed, brake application, seat belt usage). To read this data, special equipment and access to the vehicle are required. This will take place when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden dealer. Some data is electronically fed into global diagnostic systems. The manufacturer will not access information about a crash event or share it with others except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee.
- In response to an official request of police or similar government office.
- As part of the manufacturer's defence in case of legal proceedings.
- As required by law.

In addition, the manufacturer may use the collected or received data:

- For the manufacturer's research needs.
- To make it available for research needs where appropriate confidentiality is maintained and need is shown.
- To share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with other organisations for research purposes.

## Index

Add-On Electrical Equipment 226
Add-On Electrical Edulpment220
Adjustable Air Vents185
Adjustments
Seat, Initial Drive34
Agreements
Trademarks and
License 144, 178
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine236
Air Conditioning180, 182, 185
Air Conditioning Regular
Operation187
Air Filter, Passenger
Compartment187
Air Intake187
Airbags
Curtain48
Front46
Seat Belt Tensioner Light75
Side
System Check45
Alarm System
Anti-theft24
AM-FM Radio
Antenna
Fixed Mast 108, 160
Anti-theft
Alarm System24

Anti-theft (cont'd)  Alarm System Messages Antilock Brake System (ABS)  Warning Light	. 202
• •	200
Exterior	
Interior	2/1
Apple CarPlay and	4.40
Android Auto	
Armrest Storage 58	3, 59
Audio	
Bluetooth	.112
Theft-Deterrent Feature	154
Automatic	
Light Control	93
Transmission	196
Transmission Fluid	235
Automatic Transmission	
Electronic Driving	
Programs	197
Fault	
Interruption of Power	
Supply	197
Manual Mode	
Shift Lever	
Transmission Display	
Auxiliary Devices	
Auxiliary Jack	
Auxiliary Jack	

Bulb Replacement (cont'd)
Licence Plate Lamps 246
Taillamps 243
Buying New Tyres259
Buzzers, Warning 81
С
Camera, Rear Vision216
Capacities and
Specifications281
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 194
Tailgate23
Caution, Danger, and Warning 3
Central Locking System 21
Chains, Tyre259
Charging System Light 75
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction
Indicator)
Child Restraint Systems
Top Tether54
Child Restraints
ISOFIX53
Systems50
Cleaning
Exterior Care 269
Interior Care
Climate Control Systems180

Climate Control Systems (cont'd)	
Air Conditioning 1	80
Electronic 1	82
Heating 1	80
Rear Air Conditioning	
System	85
Computer, Trip	87
Control System	
Emission 2	29
Controls	
Steering Wheel 103, 1	55
Convex Mirrors	25
Coolant	
Engine 2	36
Engine Temperature Gauge	
Cooling180, 182, 1	85
Cooling System	
Engine Messages	82
Courtesy Lamps	96
Coverage Explanations1	26
Covers	95
Boot	60
Misted Lamps	95
Wheel 2	59
Cruise Control2	07
Light	80
Messages	82
Cupholders	57

## 288 Index

Curtain Airbag System 48	Driver Information	Engine (cont'd)
ח	Centre (DIC) 80	Check Light (Malfunction
Danger, Warning, and Caution 3	Driving	Indicator)
Database Coverage	Electronic Programs 197	Compartment Overview 23
Explanations126	Environment 189	Coolant 23
Davtime Running	Hill and Mountain Roads 191	Coolant Temperature Gauge7
Lamps (DRL)94	Off-Road 190	Cooling System Messages8
Descent Control System 76	E	Exhaust 19
Descent Control	Electrical Equipment,	Oil Life System 23
System (DCS)205	Add-On	Oil Messages8
Destination	Electrical System	Oil Pressure Light7
Devices	Engine Compartment Fuse	Power Messages8
Auxiliary 167	Block	Starting
Diesel	Fuses 247	Starting Your Diesel Engine 19
Starting Your Engine 192	Instrument Panel Fuse	Engine Data27
Diesel Fuel System Bleeding240	Block	Entry Lighting9
Diesel Particulate Filter194	Electronic Climate Control	Exit Lighting9
Diesel Particulate Filter	System	Exterior Lamp Controls9
Messages 83	Electronic Driving Programs 197	F
Dimensions	Electronic Stability Control 204	Fault, Automatic
Vehicle 280	Electronic Stability Control	Transmission19
Displays	(ESC) Off Light	Filter
Automatic Transmission 196	Electronic Stability Control	Fuel 23
Door	Indicator Light77	Filter,
Ajar Messages82	Emission Control System229	Engine Air Cleaner 23
Central Locking System21	Emission Information229	Fixed Air Vents18
Manual Door Locks21	Engine	Fixed Mast Antenna108, 16
	Air Cleaner/Filter 236	Flach-to-Dace C

Flashers, Hazard Warning 94 Flat Tyre
Changing 260 Fluid
Automatic Transmission 235
Brakes
Four-Wheel Drive
Transfer Case 198
Washer 237
Fog Lamps
Front95
Fog Light, Rear
Folding Mirrors
Forward Collision Alert
(FCA) System209
Four-Wheel Drive198
Four-Wheel-Drive Light 76
Front Airbag System 46
Front Fog Lamp
Light79
Front Seat Position Seats
Adjustment34
Front Seats
Adjustment34
Heated36
Front Turn Signal Lamps242
Fuel219
Filling the Tank

Fuel (cont'd)
Filter
Gauge72
Low Fuel Warning Light79
System Messages83
Fuses247
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block
G
Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature73
Fuel
Odometer
Speedometer71
Tachometer
Trip Odometer
Turn Signal
Warning Lights and
Indicators71
General Information
Vehicle Care
Global Positioning
System (GPS)
Glove Box 57
Guidance
Problems with the Route 125

### Hands-Free Phone .......173, 175 Hazard Warning Flashers ...... 94 Head Restraints ..... Headlamps ......241 Automatic Light Control ......93 Bulb Replacement ...... 240 **Daytime Running** Flash-to-Pass 93 High-Beam On Light ......79 High/Low Beam Changer ......93 Lamps On Reminder ......79 Range Adjustment .....94 Headlight Range Adjustment .... 94 Heated Rear Window ......29 Heated Front Seats ...... 36 Heating ......180, 182 Hill and Mountain Roads . . . . . . . 191 Hill Start Assist (HSA) ......203 HVAC ......180, 182, 185

#### Index 290

	L	Lights (cont'd)
Identification Plate275	Lamps	Antilock Brake System
If the System Needs Service 126	Boot96	(ABS) Warning76
Ignition Positions191	Courtesy	Automatic Control93
Immobiliser	Daytime Running (DRL)94	Brake and Clutch System 75
Light79	Exterior Controls92	Charging System75
Indicator	Front Fog95	Check Engine (Malfunction
Vehicle Ahead77	Front Turn Signal 242	Indicator)
Information	Licence Plate 246	Cruise Control80
Service	Malfunction Indicator (Check	Descent Control System76
Information on Loading the	Engine)75	Electronic Stability Control
Vehicle 62	Messages84	(ESC), Off77
Infotainment	Misted Covers95	Engine Oil Pressure78
Instrument Panel	On Reminder79	Flash-to-Pass93
Storage Area56	Reading97	Fog Lamp, Rear79
Instrument Panel Overview5, 65	Reversing95	Four-Wheel-Drive76
Interruption of Power Supply 197	Sun Visor	Front Fog Lamp79
Introduction 2, 100	Taillamps 243	High-Beam On79
ISOFIX Child Restraint	Lane Departure Warning218	High/Low Beam Changer93
Systems 53	Lane Departure Warning Light 77	Immobiliser79
J	Lighting	Lane Departure Warning
Jack	Entry98	Low Fuel Warning79
Auxiliary111	Exit98	Pre-Heat78
Jump Starting265	Illumination Control96	Safety Belt Reminders74
	Lights	Traction Control
K	Airbag and Seat Belt	System (TCS)78
Key and Lock Messages 84	Tensioner75	Traction Control System
Keys 17		Warning77

Lights (cont'd)	Messages (cont'd)	Misted Light Covers 99
Trailer Indicator80	Brake System82	Monitor System, Tyre
Tyre Pressure Monitoring	Diesel Particulate Filter83	Pressure254
System	Door Ajar82	N
Load Compartment Lamps 96	Engine Cooling System82	1
Loading the Vehicle	Engine Oil83	Navigation
Locks	Engine Power83	Destination
Central Locking System21	Fuel System83	Using the System11
Manual Door	Key and Lock84	Navigation Symbols
Safety22	Lamp84	New Vehicle Break-In 19
Low Fuel Warning Light 79	Object Detection System84	0
	Ride Control System	Object Detection System
M Maintananaa	Service Vehicle85	Messages 84
Maintenance	Steering System85	Object Detection, Side Blind
Air Conditioning Regular	Transmission86	Zone Alert (SBZA)21
Operation	Tyre85	Odometer
Maintenance Schedule	Vehicle81	Trip72
Recommended Fluids and	Vehicle Reminder87	Off-Road190
Lubricants	Vehicle Speed87	Driving
Transfer Case	Messaging	Oil
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 75	Text	Engine
Manual Mode	Mirrors	Engine Oil Life System 234
Map Data Updates	Automatic Dimming	Messages83
Maps117	Rearview27	Pressure Light78
Messages	Convex25	Operation
Airbag System84	Folding26	Infotainment
Anti-theft Alarm System	Manual Rearview27	Outlets
Battery Voltage and	Power25	Power7
Charging81		

## 292 Index

Overview100, 154	Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts 44	Recommended Fluids and
Instrument Panel65	Pressure	Lubricants274
Owner Assistance283	Tyre 282	Remote Control
	Privacy	Radio20
Parking       193         Brake       203         Parking Assist       211         Passenger Compartment Air	Vehicle Data Recording 285 Problems with Route Guidance	Remote Vehicle Start
Filter	Radio	Replacing Safety Belt System
Personalisation	AM-FM 157	Parts after a Crash 45
Vehicle90	Radio Reception106, 158	Restraints
Phone	Radios	Where to Put52
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto	AM-FM Radio	Reverse Lamps
Bluetooth	Rear Air Conditioning System	Electronic Stability (ESC) 204 Messages
Hands-Free	Rear Fog Light	Roof Rack System
USB 109. 161	Rear Storage59	s
Positioning	Rear Vision Camera (RVC)216	Safety Belts42
Vehicle 125	Rear Window Washer/Wiper 69	Care44
Power	Rear Windows	Reminders
Mirrors	Heated29	Replacing after a Crash45
Outlets70	Rearview Mirrors27	Three-Point43
Protection, Battery98	Automatic Dimming27	Use During Pregnancy 44
Seat Adjustment36	Recognition	Safety Locks
Windows27	Voice 127	Seats
Pre-Heat Light		Adjustment, Front34

Seats (cont'd)	Starting the Diesel Engine 192	System (cont'd)
Head Restraints32	Starting the Engine192	Global Positioning 124
Heated Front36	Steering189	Infotainment 153
Position, Front34	Wheel Adjustment66	Roof Rack62
Power Adjustment, Front36	Wheel Controls67	т
Rear37	Steering System Messages 85	Tachometer
Second Row	Steering Wheel	
Third Row Seat39	Controls	Tailgate
Second Row Seats	Storage	Taillamps243 Technical Data
Service	Boot Cover60	
Climate Control System 180	Rear	Tyre Pressure
Doing Your Own Work 230	Vehicle 229	Theft-Deterrent Systems
Vehicle Messages85	Storage Areas	Immobiliser25
Service and Maintenance	Armrest	Third-Row Seats
Service Information 273	Glove Box57	Three-Point Seat Belt
Service Information273	Information on Loading the	Tire Pressure Monitoring
Servicing System126	Vehicle62	
Settings123, 141, 175	Instrument Panel56	System Light
Shift Lever	Roof Rack System62	
Side Airbag System47	Sunglasses58	Top-Tether Child Restraint
Side Blind Zone Alert215	Sun Visor Lamps 97	Systems54
Signals, Turn and	Sun Visors	Towing Another Vehicle
Lane-Change95	Sunglass Storage 58	Trailer
Specifications and	Symbols	
Capacities	Navigation117	Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 226 Vehicle 267
Speedometer 71	System	Traction
Start Assist, Hill	Forward Collision	
Start Vehicle, Remote 19	Alert (FCA) 209	Control System (TCS) 204

## 294 Index

Traction (cont'd)	Tyres (cont'd)	Vehicle Care
Control System Warning	Changing 260	Tyre Pressure
Light77	Messages85	Vehicle Data Reco
Traction Control System	Pressure	Privacy
(TCS) Off Light 78	Pressure Monitor Operation 256	Vehicle Dimension
Trademarks and	Pressure Monitor System 254	Vehicle Identificati
License	Rotation 258	Plate
Agreements144, 178, 283	Tyres and Wheels253	Vehicle Positioning
Trailer	U	Vehicle Storage
Sway Control (TSC) 226	Updates	Vehicle Weight
Towing	Map Data 126	Ventilation
Trailer Indicator Light 80	USB Port109, 161	Adjustable Air
Transfer Case198	Using the Navigation System 112	Fixed Air Vents .
Transmission	Using the System103	Visors
Automatic	Using This Manual	Voice Recognition
Fluid, Automatic 235		w
Messages86	V	Warning
Transmission Display196	Vehicle	Caution and Dar
Tread Depth257	Identification Number (VIN) 275	Warning Chimes .
Trip Computer 87	Messages81	Warning Lights, G
Trip Odometer72	Personalisation90	Indicators
Turn and Lane-Change	Reminder Messages87	Warnings
Signals	Remote Start19	Hazard Flashers
Turn Signal73	Speed Messages87	Washer Fluid
Tyre Pressure282	Towing	Weights
Tyres	Towing Another Vehicle 268	Vehicle
Buying New Tyres 259	Vehicle Ahead Indicator 77	Wheel Covers
Chains		Wheels and Tyres

Vehicle Care	
Tyre Pressure	253
Vehicle Data Recording and	
Privacy	. 285
Vehicle Dimensions	. 280
Vehicle Identification	
Plate	275
Vehicle Positioning	
Vehicle Storage	
Vehicle Weight	
Ventilation	
Adjustable Air	185
Fixed Air Vents	
Visors	30
Voice Recognition	. 127
W	
Warning	
Caution and Danger	3
Warning Chimes	
Warning Lights, Gauges, and	
Indicators	71
Warnings	
Hazard Flashers	94
Washer Fluid	
Weights	
Vehicle	278
Wheel Covers	
Wheels and Tyres	

Where to Put the Restraint 52
Windows
Heated, Rear29
Power27
Windshield
Wiper/Washer68
Wiper Blade Replacement 240
Wipers
Rear Washer69